

UC-NRLF



B 4 517 507

BOOK ONE  
JUNIOR LATIN

---

FORSYTHE AND GUMMERE

CHRISTOPHER SOWER COMPANY

Digitized by Google





EDUCATION DEPT.

760  
F735  
v.1





UNIV. OF  
CALIFORNIA

# JUNIOR LATIN

## BOOK ONE

### The Declension of Nouns, Adjectives and Pronouns

---

### Roman Ideas

---

BY

JOHN EVANS FORSYTHE, A. B.

Formerly Principal of the Forsythe School, Philadelphia

AND

RICHARD MOTT GUMMERE, Ph. D.

Associate Professor of Latin in Haverford College

---

PHILADELPHIA  
CHRISTOPHER SOWER COMPANY  
124 North Eighteenth Street

TO YOU  
ADDRESS

Copyright, 1917, by  
CHRISTOPHER SOWER COMPANY  
EDUCATION DEPT.



## PREFACE

"EVERY beginning is difficult"; especially so for minds immature, more especially so when they are grappling with the difficulties of a foreign tongue, and most especially so when they strike upon the rocky enigmas of a dead language. Every unconquered mountain peak has one easiest side of approach. Every branch of human learning has its primer of elements, and it is the province and the privilege of the true teacher to search all corners of the great world of knowledge for elemental aids perfectly adapted to the first faltering steps of the young beginner.

Whatever views one may entertain as to the advantage of studying Latin, one must confess that there is good in Latin for every English-speaking person, and especially for those who may be occupied in any of the professions.

Whatever views one may entertain as to the propriety of beginning Latin 'early, it must be confessed that elementary instruction therein is especially welcome to a young mind with memory bright and curiosity athirst to learn the unknown ways of its ancient ancestry. Such instruction, safely stored, becomes a solid base for modern education.

To assist the young mind, probing darkly, by some labor-saving arrangement and presentation of the elements of Latin, as well as to equip it with the useful knowledge which is the reward for effort, is the design of this book.

From lexicons and libraries, from text-books and travel, from any and every possible source the authors have taken things good to have, the finest fruits from any tree, no matter in whose garden it grew. From Cicero and Cæsar, from Lane and from Bennett, from grammars galore, from Becker, and Platner, and Friedländer, and a host of primers and readers, wherever was found a bright idea valuable to the little student, it was purloined, with gratitude to the originator.

Every effort has been made to search quotations from the best ancient authors to illustrate Vocabularies. But inasmuch as the noble Roman felt it quite beneath his dignity to write primers, such material is now very scarce. Each Vocabulary aims to tell some topical story. Each new word is a moving picture of ancient life. The words therefore are not arranged by the alphabet, but in order of kinship of meaning, of opposite view, or of similar sound; all done to help the little learner. The theme of war has been reserved for later study, on the ground that it is incompatible with the whole-hearted love and joy of child-life.

Greek origin in Latin words has been noted in the Vocabularies, and little people studying French may watch continually with pleasure for the many French words descended directly from Latin. Few new verbs have been introduced, and those used are all in the third person.

The title of this book as originally planned was "The Five Declensions for the Age of Ten": a title prompted by the fact that children entering "Secondary School" would better spend their energies in mastering the elements of Latin than in grappling with higher learning in the present prevailing fashion of juvenile handbooks. America believes education essential to best citizenship; essential also, as Cicero taught, to happiness in mature years. A knowledge of Latin is the one foundation-rock of an English Education. When presented as a picture of the social, political, and economic life of that great people who blazed the trail, and spent their life-blood, that modern civilization might revel in triumphant progress, it is invaluable to old and young.

## TEN AXIOMS FOR TEACHING LATIN

---

1. First steps can never be made too easy for the beginner.

---
2. A text-book, like any other working tool, should be wrought out in the white heat of the class-room, not carved out of the theories of some scholarly studio.

---
3. "Learn one thing at a time and learn it well."

---
4. Concentrate energy upon each topic until it is mastered.

---
5. Provide plenty of material for abundant practice thereon.

---
6. "Visualizing" is the true teacher's best trick.

---
7. Therefore do not chop up the Latin paradigms and strew them through the book; group them for comprehensive mastery.

---
8. Eternal repetition is the ladder to achievement.

---
9. "Would you learn Latin, you must bathe in Latin."

---
10. Latin should never be regarded merely as one of the cast-iron conditions of College Admission; it is the living picture of the life of a good portion of our own ancestors; therefore we cannot know too much of their customs in order to comprehend our own.



## HOW TO STUDY LATIN IN THE BEGINNING

EVERY instructor is likely to be called upon to teach new subjects. With this book it is perfectly possible for a teacher who has no knowledge whatever of the Latin language to handle the subject successfully, simply by reason of maturity of mind and by work in advance of the class.

A little collateral home reading or study of Roman life and history, supplying live material to interest the young in their new and untried work, will assist wonderfully.

“Writing makes an accurate man.”

Let every pupil procure a blank dictation book, *ruled*.

**In preparation**, the pupil should write neatly therein the daily lesson in full, putting a Latin sentence on every fourth line (see page 63). The next line should contain the translation, and the third line the parsing-diagram, as there explained. Let all Vocabularies also be carefully drafted into the dictation books, besides all Declensions, using the method of the Tables of Terminations.

The effort to make the dictation book an exact facsimile of the text-book in arrangement, in word copy, and in quantity marks will enable the pupil to master the Latin.

**For recitation**, put away all dictation books. Then: 1st. Read the sentences in Latin; 2d. Translate into good English; and 3d. Parse orally. Parse accurately, and pronounce accurately, using the correct Roman Pronunciation. Declensions require blackboard as well as oral recitation.

Diagrams of translation and parsing, Tables of Declension, and Vocabularies, all thus written, become the counterpart of problems in Arithmetic and are equally interesting. Preserve the finished dictation books. They record progress.

Many teachers of younger pupils may find it best to use the earlier pages for reference only, beginning immediately with **porta**, *a gate* (page 16), of the First Declension, continuing carefully until the pupil acquires some solid footing in the Five Declensions, and then returning for review to the Introduction.

Teachers of large classes will find great economy of time and energy in concert drill. There is no better method of impressing the delicate differences of the vowel sounds. The ear assists the eye.

The Nouns, in the Declensions, are declined and defined in full. Skip-questions may have abundant play, all over the page and all over the class. For example: **Ques.** *portā?* **Ans.** *by a gate.* **Ques.** *of roses?* **Ans.** *rosārum.*



# INTRODUCTION

---

## WHAT IS LATIN? THE LATIN ALPHABET, ITS ORIGIN

### English

What is English?

English is the language of England, and of most of North America.

Whence has English come?

English has had two sources. It is partly Anglo-Saxon and partly Latin. Its Anglo-Saxon part came from Northern Europe, its Latin part from Old Rome, that is, from Southern Europe.

In what are the two parts different?

The *little* words of our language are mostly from the Anglo-Saxon, while the *big* words come from the Latin.

Whence came these languages in the beginning?

The mother tongue of the present European languages is called Indo-European. Its origin is unknown. But, roughly speaking, English may be called a granddaughter of Latin. Roumanian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, and Italian, commonly spoken of as the Romance languages, may be called the daughters of Latin.

### Latin

What is Latin?

Latin was the language of Old Rome.

When was it in use?

Latin was written and spoken about 2000 years ago, in the time of Jesus.

Where was it in use?

Latin was used in Italy, Southern France, Spain, Northern Africa, and somewhat in other countries.

How long was it in use?

Latin was the principal language for more than 1000 years.

### The Latin Alphabet

How many letters has the Latin Alphabet?

Twenty-five letters, the same as the English, lacking *w*.

How are the letters divided?

Into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*.

The Consonants are the other letters.

What are the Diphthongs?

The Diphthongs, or Double Vowels, are *au, ae, oe, ui, eu*, and sometimes *ai, ei, oi, ou*.



## THE ROMAN PRONUNCIATION

### The Vowels

ǎ as in <i>artis'tic</i>	ā as in <i>ärt, fä'ther</i>	Both in <i>ähä'</i>
ě as in <i>gět</i>	ē as in <i>prey</i> , = ā (English)	Both in <i>gět'away', hey'day'</i>
ĭ as in <i>sĭn</i>	ī as in <i>machĭne', police'</i> , = ee in <i>seēn</i>	Both in <i>sĭx'tēn', Hē'be</i>
ǫ as in <i>òbey'</i>	ō as in <i>gō, nōte, vōte</i>	Both in <i>òhö'</i>
ŭ as in <i>full</i>	ū as in <i>rŭle</i> , = oo in <i>fōol</i>	Both in <i>cŭck'ōō, hōō'dōō</i>

### The Diphthongs

au like <i>ow</i> in <i>now</i> , <i>ou</i> in <i>house</i>	ai	= ah-ee
ae like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> = "aye," (the English "yes")	ei like <i>ei</i> in <i>eight</i>	
oe like <i>oy</i> in <i>boy</i>	oi	= oh-ee
ui like English <i>we</i> = oo-ee	ou	= oh-oo
eu like <i>e</i> followed by <i>u</i> in English = eh-oo		

### The Consonants

c always like <i>k</i>	x always as <i>ks</i>
g always as in <i>get</i>	bs pronounced like <i>ps</i>
j like <i>y</i> in <i>yet</i>	bt pronounced <i>pt</i>
r slightly trilled	ph, th, ch like <i>p, t, c</i> . Before about 100 B. C.
s always as in <i>sĭn</i>	ll, mm, nn, tt, both distinctly sounded
t always as in <i>tĭn</i>	qu like English <i>qu</i> in <i>quit</i>
v like English <i>w</i>	su like English <i>sw</i> in <i>sweet</i>

NOTE.—Read thus in English, ǎ, a *short*; ā, a *long*; ǎ̄, a *common*.



# SYLLABLES, QUANTITY, ACCENT

## Syllables

How many syllables are there in a Latin word?

Every word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs.

What are they called?

The last syllable is called the *Ultima*; the next to last the *Penult*; the third before the last the *Antepenult*.

## Quantity

What is meant by Quantity?

A syllable is called long or short according to the *time* required in pronouncing it; two short vowels being equal to one long one.

How is Quantity marked?

The long vowel of a long syllable is marked thus, *nōn*, *not*.

The short vowel of a short syllable is marked thus, *āb*, *from*. (In this book short vowels are mostly not marked at all.)

The vowel common is marked thus, *sācrum* templum, *a holy temple*, (oftener short than long).

NOTE.—The English Alphabet appears to have had its beginning in the East. Assyrian and Egyptian alphabets were well established. Moses had written the X Commandments on Tables of Stone. From the East the Phœnicians carried to Greece 3400 years ago the letters we use today. The Romans borrowed them later from the Greeks for their own use, thus bringing them down to modern civilization.

Very little writing was done in those very ancient times. History was recorded in song, to be written down in verse ages later. The Poems of Homer exemplify this fact.

Laws and treaties were recorded on marbles, victories described on pillars and pyramids. When men began to write they used Capital letters only, going from right to left on the page; later they wrote both to the left and to the right, making a turning, *versus*, at each end, in imitation of the plowman. Finally our present plan, from left to right only, came into vogue.

The Romans printed their books by hand in capitals. This great labor made books very scarce. Hence it was that correct speech became all important. Proper pronunciation in public was a great care. Cicero writes, a vowel before *nf* or *ns* was always long. This we obey. For 60 years, even while Cicero was a boy, long vowels were sometimes doubled, thus *āra*, *an altar*, was AARA; *jūs*, *right*, was IVVS.

The next step is seen in the *i longa*, or tall *i*, thus *hic*, *here*, was hIC.

Later the *apex*, (∩), as on the top of a *flamen's* (high-priest's) cap, was adopted. This Cicero probably used. Thus *lēge*, *by law*, was LĒGE. This was clumsy, and after the Christian era writers used the lower part of the *apex*, thus LĒGE; but finally adopted the upper horizontal part, thus LĒGE; which we use.

## Quantity Rules for Vowels

- A vowel before another vowel is short.
- A vowel before *h* is short.
- A diphthong is always long.
- A vowel before *nf*, *ns*, *j* (often), *gn* (often) is long.

## Quantity Rules for Syllables

- A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel.
- A syllable is long when it contains a diphthong.
- A syllable is long when it contains a short vowel followed by *x* or *z*, or by two consonants (the latter of which is not *l* or *r*).
- A syllable is common when it contains a short vowel followed by two consonants (the latter of which is *l* or *r*).

## Accent

What is accent?

Accent is stress of voice.

Where is the accent mark placed?

Words of two syllables have the accent on the penult, thus *ho'mō*, *man*.

Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult if it is long, thus *Rōmānō'rum*, *of the Romans*; otherwise on the antepenult, thus *Ci'cerō*, *Cicero*.



## THE PARTS OF SPEECH

What name is given to the eight Classes of words?

They are called the Eight Parts of Speech.

What are the Parts of Speech in English?

The Parts of Speech in English are the same as in Latin, with the addition of the Articles *a, an, the*.

Name the Eight Parts of Speech in Latin.

Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

1. What is a Noun?

A Noun is the name of a *person, place, thing, or quality*; as, Cicerō, *Cicero*; Hispānia, *Spain*; lapis, *a stone*; timor, *fear*.

2. What is an Adjective?

An Adjective is a word used to *describe, qualify, or limit* a Noun or Pronoun; as, bona puella, *a good girl*.  
duae puellae, *two girls*.

3. What is a Pronoun?

A Pronoun is a word used *in place of* a Noun; as, ego, *I*; is, *he*.

4. What is a Verb?

A Verb is a word which asserts or declares some *being or action*; as, est, *he is*;  
currit, *he runs*.

5. What is an Adverb?

An Adverb is a word used to *modify* a Verb, an Adjective, or another Adverb; as, tardē currit, *he runs slowly*;  
minus pulcher, *less beautiful*;  
nōn semper, *not always*.

6. What is a Preposition?

A Preposition is a word used to join other words, and also to show the relation between them; as,  
Est in bonō locō. It is *in* a good place.

7. What is a Conjunction?

A Conjunction is a word used to *connect* words and sentences; as,  
Puerī et puellae, *boys and girls*.  
Currit et salit, *he runs and he jumps*.

8. What is an Interjection?

An Interjection is a word used in *exclamation*; as, heu, *alas!*

## PROPERTIES OF NOUNS: GENDER, NUMBER, CASE

What three properties have Nouns? Nouns have Gender, Number, and Case.

### Gender

Name the three Genders.

Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

What do these denote?

The term Masculine is applied to *male* nouns, and to nouns imagined to be *male*; as, *agricola, farmer*; *honor, honor*.

The term Feminine is applied to *female* nouns, and to nouns imagined to be *female*; as, *fēmina, woman*; *nāvis, a ship*.

The Latin term Neuter signifies *neither of the two*. It is often applied to nouns *neither male nor female*; as, *metallum, a metal*; *mare, the sea*.

But some nouns in Latin are called Neuter, which cannot be imagined to be without gender; as, *animal, an animal*.

Some nouns also have two genders, Masculine and Feminine. These are said to have Common Gender; as, *mūs, a mouse, a rat*.

### Rules of Gender

**Masculine:** Names of *males*, of winds and months, also most names of rivers and mountains.

**Feminine:** Names of *females*, also most names of plants, flowers, shrubs, and trees.

**Neuter:** Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, letters of the alphabet, words, phrases, and clauses used as nouns, also many others.

**Common:** Names "applicable to either sex," or imagined so.

### Number

Name the two Numbers.

The Singular and the Plural.

What do these denote?

The Singular denotes *one*, the Plural *more than one*.

### Case

Name the three Cases in English.

1. Nominative, the case of the *Subject*; as,  
The *boy* runs.
2. Possessive, the case of *Possession*; as,  
The *boy's* boot.
3. Objective, the case of the *Object*; as,  
The *boy* loves *apples*.

Name the six cases in Latin.

1. Nominative,  
The Case of the *Subject*.
2. Genitive,  
The English Objective with preposition *of*.
3. Dative,  
The English Objective with prepositions *to* or *for*.
4. Accusative,  
The Case of the *Object*.
5. Vocative,  
The Case of *Address*.
6. Ablative,  
The English Objective with prepositions *by*, *with*, *from*.

## INFLECTION, THE DECLENSIONS, PARSING

### Inflection

What is the chief characteristic of the first four Parts of Speech?

The first four have *Inflection*. The last four do not.

What is Inflection?

Inflection is the changing of the ending of a word to express change of meaning.

What is Declension?

The Inflection of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called Declension.

What is Conjugation?

The Inflection of Verbs is called Conjugation.

### The Declensions

How many Declensions are there in English?

There is *one* form of Declension in English; viz.:

SING.	PLUR.
Nom. <i>boy</i>	Nom. <i>boys</i>
Poss. <i>boy's</i>	Poss. <i>boys'</i>
Obj. <i>boy</i>	Obj. <i>boys</i>

How many Declensions are there in Latin?

There are Five Declensions in Latin, distinguished by the *ending* of the Genitive Case Singular, as well as by the final *stem-letter*; viz.:

Declension	Genitive Ending	Final Stem Letter
1st	ae	ā
2d	i	ō
3d	is	{ <i>some consonant</i> }
4th	ūs	ū
5th	ēi or ĕi	ē

### Parsing

1. What is Parsing?

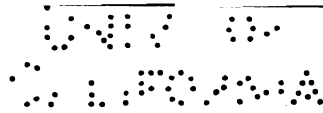
Parsing is,

- 1st. The locating of words in their proper families; and,
- 2d. Showing their relations to their neighbors.

How are declined words parsed?

According to their Class, Declension, Gender, Number, and Case; also according to their relations to their neighbors.

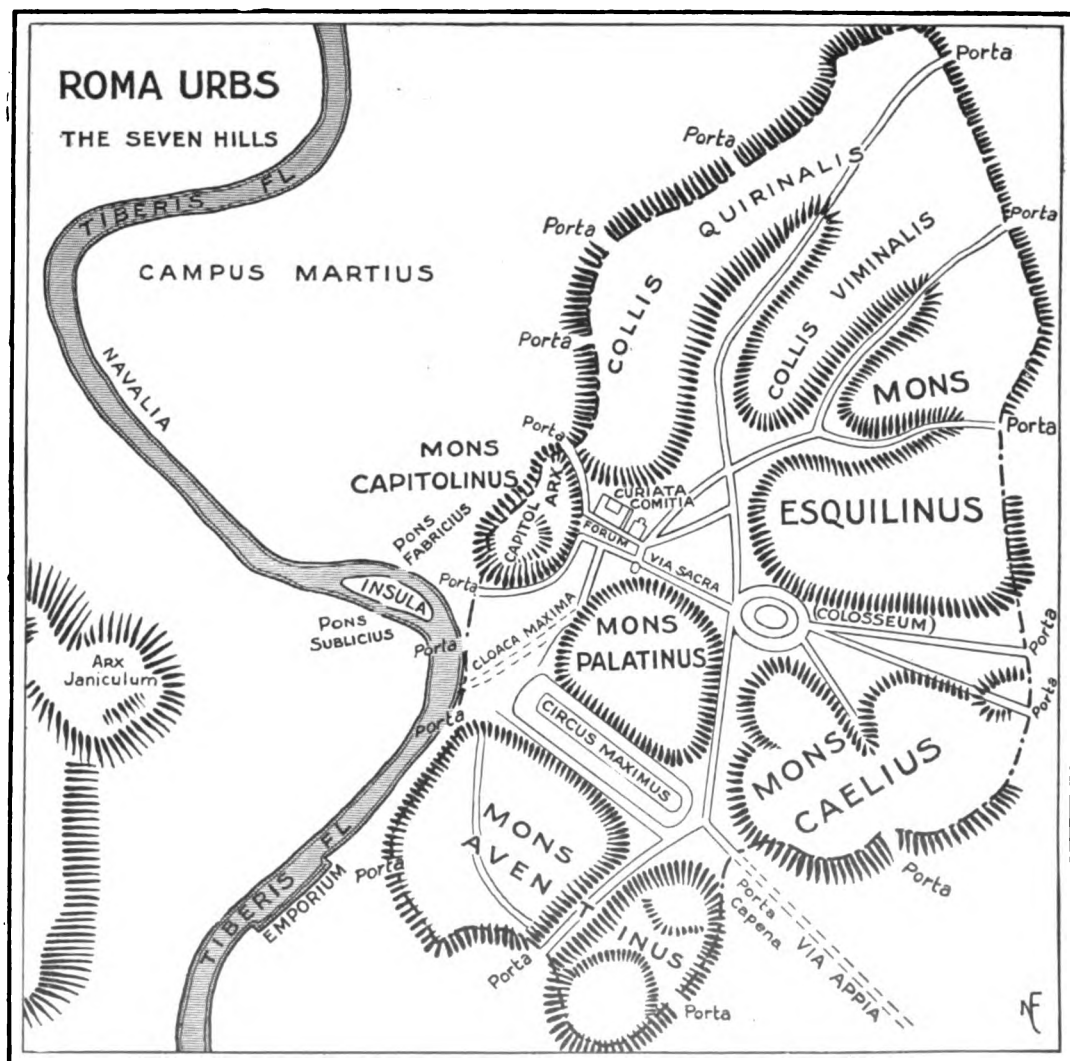




## IMPORTANT RULES OF SYNTAX

### RULE.

1. The Subject of a Verb is in the Nominative Case.
2. The Object of a Verb is usually in the Accusative Case.
3. The Predicate Noun takes the case of the Subject.
4. The Limiting Noun is put in the Genitive.
5. A Verb agrees with its Subject in Person and Number.
6. Twenty-six Prepositions take the Accusative.
7. Eight Prepositions take the Ablative.
8. Four Prepositions take either the Accusative or Ablative.
9. The Adjective must agree with the Noun which it qualifies in gender, number and case, but need not in declension.
10. The Predicate Adjective agrees with the Subject Noun or Subject Pronoun of the Verb.
11. An Appositive takes the case and number of the Noun or Pronoun which it explains.
12. The Relative Pronoun **Qui** agrees with its antecedent in number and gender, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause wherein it occurs.
13. Adverbs modify Verbs, Adjectives, or other Adverbs.
14. Conjunctions connect words and sentences.



---

**THE FIVE DECLENSIONS**  
**NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES**

---

# FIRST DECLENSION—NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

## FIRST DECLENSION. *The a Nouns (ā Stems)*

**Endings.**—The Genitive Singular of Nouns of the First Declension ends in **ae**.

The Nominative Singular ends in **ā**.

**Gender.**—Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they denote men.

**porta** is a Noun, Feminine Gender, First Declension.

**poēta** is a Noun, Masculine Gender, First Declension

### SINGULAR NUMBER

#### Cases

<i>Nominative.</i>	<b>port-a</b> (por'tā), { <i>a gate</i> (Subject) <i>the gate</i>
<i>Genitive.</i>	<b>port-ae</b> (por'taye), <i>of a gate</i>
<i>Dative.</i>	<b>port-ae</b> (por'taye), <i>to, for a gate</i>
<i>Accusative.</i>	<b>port-am</b> (por'tām), <i>a gate</i> (Object)
<i>Vocative.</i>	<b>port-a</b> (por'tā), <i>O gate</i>
<i>Ablative.</i>	<b>port-ā</b> (por'tā), <i>by, with, from</i> <i>a gate</i>

### PLURAL NUMBER

#### Cases

<i>Nominative.</i>	<b>port-ae</b> (por'taye), { <i>gates</i> (Subject) <i>the gates</i>
<i>Genitive.</i>	<b>port-ārum</b> (por tā'rōom), <i>of gates</i>
<i>Dative.</i>	<b>port-is</b> (por'tēce), <i>to, for gates</i>
<i>Accusative.</i>	<b>port-ās</b> (por'tās), <i>gates</i> (Object)
<i>Vocative.</i>	<b>port-ae</b> (por'taye), <i>O gates</i>
<i>Ablative.</i>	<b>port-is</b> (por'tēce), <i>by, with, from</i> <i>gates</i>

**rosa** (rō'sā), *a rose*

**rosa** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl.

#### Sing.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>rosa</b> , <i>a rose</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>rosae</b> , <i>of a rose</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>rosae</b> , <i>to, for a rose</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>rosam</b> , <i>a rose</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>rosa</b> , <i>O rose</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>rosā</b> , <i>by, with, from a rose</i>

#### Plur.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>rosae</b> , <i>roses</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>rosārum</b> , <i>of roses</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>rosis</b> , <i>to, for roses</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>rosās</b> , <i>roses</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>rosae</b> , <i>O roses</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>rosis</b> , <i>by, with, from roses</i>

### SINGULAR NUMBER

#### Cases

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>poēta</b> (pō ā'tā), { <i>a poet</i> <i>the poet</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>poētae</b> (pō ā'taye), <i>of a poet</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>poētae</b> (pō ā'taye), <i>to, for a poet</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>poētām</b> (pō ā'tām), <i>a poet</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>poēta</b> (pō ā'tā), <i>O poet</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>poētā</b> (pō ā'tā), <i>by, with, from a poet</i>

### PLURAL NUMBER

#### Cases

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>poētae</b> (pō ā'taye), { <i>poets</i> <i>the poets</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>poētārum</b> (pō ā tā'rōom), <i>of poets</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>poētis</b> (pō ā'teece), <i>to, for poets</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>poētās</b> (pō ā'tās), <i>poets</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>poētae</b> (pō ā'taye), <i>O poets</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>poētis</b> (pō ā'teece), <i>by, with, from poets</i>

**viola** (wī'ó là), *a violet*

**viola** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl.

#### Sing.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>viola</b> , <i>a violet</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>violae</b> , <i>of a violet</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>violae</b> , <i>to, for a violet</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>violam</b> , <i>a violet</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>viola</b> , <i>O violet</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>violā</b> , <i>by, with, from a violet</i>

#### Plur.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>violae</b> , <i>violets</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>violārum</b> , <i>of violets</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>violis</b> , <i>to, for violets</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>violās</b> , <i>violets</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>violae</b> , <i>O violets</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>violis</b> , <i>by, with, from violets</i>



## VOCABULARY

**Verbs** { 3d. Pers. Sing. **est, is**  
3d. Pers. Plur. **sunt, are**

### Adjectives, Feminine

NOM. SING.    NOM. PLUR.

**nova,**            **novae, new**

*(the opposite of)*

**antiqua,**        **antiquae, old, ancient**

**parva,**            **parvae, small, little**

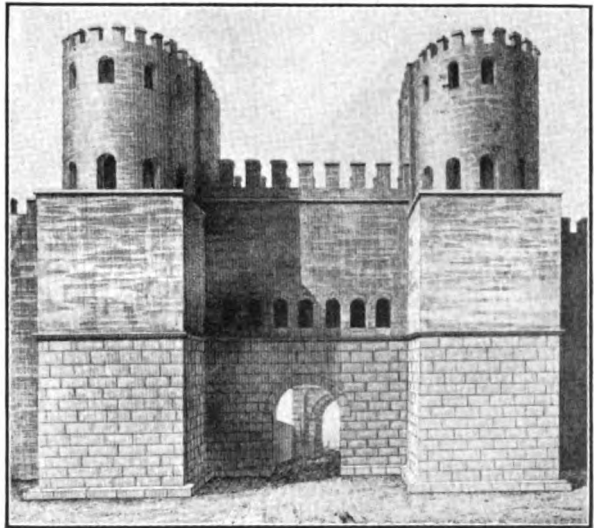
**magna,**          **magnae, great, large**

**alta,**             **altae, high, deep**

**alba,**            **albae, white**

**flāva,**            **flāvae, yellow**

**pulchra,**         **pulchrae, beautiful**



PORTA URBIS IN VIA APPIA

### Sentences

#### A

1. Porta est nova.
2. Porta est antiqua.
3. Porta est parva.
4. Porta est magna.
5. Porta est alta.
6. Rosa est alba.
7. Rosa est flāva.

8. The rose is beautiful.
9. The violet is little.
10. The violet is beautiful.

#### B

1. Portae sunt novae.
2. Portae sunt antiquae.
3. Portae sunt parvae.
4. Portae sunt magnae.
5. Portae sunt altae.
6. Rosae sunt albae.
7. Rosae sunt flāvae.

8. Roses are beautiful.
9. Violets are small.
10. Violets are beautiful.

**fēmina** (fā'mī nā), a woman  
**fēmina** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl.

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **fēmina** (fā'mī nā), { a woman  
the woman  
**Gen.** **fēminae** (fā'mī naye), of a woman  
**Dat.** **fēminae** (fā'mī naye), to, for a woman.  
**Acc.** **fēminam** (fā'mī nām), a woman  
**Voc.** **fēmina** (fā'mī nā), O woman  
**Abl.** **fēminā** (fā'mī nā), by, with, from a woman

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **fēminae** (fā'mī naye), { women  
the women  
**Gen.** **fēminārum** (fā mī nā'rōom), of women  
**Dat.** **fēminis** (fā'mī nēēce), to, for women  
**Acc.** **fēminās** (fā'mī nās), women  
**Voc.** **fēminae** (fā'mī naye), O women  
**Abl.** **fēminis** (fā'mī nēēce), by, with, from women

**rēgina** (rā gēē'nā), a queen  
**rēgina** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl.

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **rēgina**, a queen  
**Gen.** **rēginae**, of a queen  
**Dat.** **rēginae**, to, for a queen  
**Acc.** **rēginam**, a queen  
**Voc.** **rēgina**, O queen  
**Abl.** **rēginā**, by, with, from a queen

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **rēginae**, queens  
**Gen.** **rēginārum**, of queens  
**Dat.** **rēginis**, to, for queens  
**Acc.** **rēginās**, queens  
**Voc.** **rēginae**, O queens  
**Abl.** **rēginis**, by, with, from queens

**puella** (pōō el'lā), a girl  
**puella** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl.

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **puella**, a girl  
**Gen.** **puellae**, of a girl  
**Dat.** **puellae**, to, for a girl  
**Acc.** **puellam**, a girl  
**Voc.** **puella**, O girl  
**Abl.** **puellā**, by, with, from a girl

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **puellae**, girls  
**Gen.** **puellārum**, of girls  
**Dat.** **puellis**, to, for girls  
**Acc.** **puellās**, girls  
**Voc.** **puellae**, O girls  
**Abl.** **puellis**, by, with, from girls

**Mūsa** (mōō'sā), a muse  
**Mūsa** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl.

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **Mūsa**, a muse  
**Gen.** **Mūsae**, of a muse  
**Dat.** **Mūsae**, to, for a muse  
**Acc.** **Mūsam**, a muse  
**Voc.** **Mūsa**, O muse  
**Abl.** **Mūsā**, by, with, from a muse

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **Mūsae**, muses  
**Gen.** **Mūsārum**, of muses  
**Dat.** **Mūsis**, to, for muses  
**Acc.** **Mūsās**, muses  
**Voc.** **Mūsae**, O muses  
**Abl.** **Mūsis**, by, with, from muses

## VOCABULARY

### Adjectives, Feminine

NOM. SING.	NOM. PLUR.
<b>amica,</b>	<b>amicae, friendly</b>
<b>benigna,</b>	<b>benignae, kind</b>
<b>bona,</b>	<b>bonae, good</b>
<b>ignāra,</b>	<b>ignārae, ignorant</b>
<b>ignāva,</b>	<b>ignāvae, lazy</b>
<b>industria,</b>	<b>industriae, industrious</b>
<b>justa,</b>	<b>justae, just</b>
<b>prompta,</b>	<b>promptae, prompt</b>
<b>superba,</b>	<b>superbae, proud</b>
<b>timida,</b>	<b>timidae, timid</b>



FEMINA ROMANA

### Sentences

#### A

1. Fēmina est benigna.
2. Fēmina est bona.
3. Fēmina est amica.
4. Fēmina est industria.
5. Puella est industria.
6. Puella est prompta.
7. Puella est ignāva.

#### B

1. Fēminae sunt benignae.
2. Fēminae sunt bonae.
3. Fēminae sunt amicae.
4. Fēminae sunt industriae.
5. Puellae sunt industriae.
6. Puellae sunt promptae.
7. Puellae sunt ignāvae.

8. The girl is timid.
9. The queen is just.
10. The queen is proud.

8. Girls are timid.
9. Queens are kind.
10. Queens are proud.

**corōna** (kò rō'nà), *a crown*

**corōna** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **corōna**, *a crown*

*Gen.* **corōnae**, *of a crown*

*Dat.* **corōnae**, *to, for a crown*

*Acc.* **corōnam**, *a crown*

*Voc.* **corōna**, *O crown*

*Abl.* **corōnā**, *by, with, from a crown*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **corōnae**, *crowns*

*Gen.* **corōnārum**, *of crowns*

*Dat.* **corōnis**, *to, for crowns*

*Acc.* **corōnās**, *crowns*

*Voc.* **corōnae**, *O crowns*

*Abl.* **corōnis**, *by, with, from crowns*

**gemma** (gem'mà), *a gem*

**gemma** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **gemma**, *a gem.*

*Gen.* **gemmae**, *of a gem*

*Dat.* **gemmae**, *to, for a gem*

*Acc.* **gemma**, *a gem*

*Voc.* **gemma**, *O gem*

*Abl.* **gemma**, *by, with, from a gem*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **gemmae**, *gems*

*Gen.* **gemmae**, *of gems*

*Dat.* **gemmae**, *to, for gems*

*Acc.* **gemmae**, *gems*

*Voc.* **gemmae**, *O gems*

*Abl.* **gemmae**, *by, with, from gems*

**terra** (ter'rà), *a land, a country*

**terra** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **terra**, *a land*

*Gen.* **terrae**, *of a land*

*Dat.* **terrae**, *to, for a land*

*Acc.* **terram**, *a land*

*Voc.* **terra**, *O land*

*Abl.* **terrā**, *by, with, from a land*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **terrae**, *lands*

*Gen.* **terrārum**, *of lands*

*Dat.* **terrīs**, *to, for lands*

*Acc.* **terrās**, *lands*

*Voc.* **terrae**, *O lands*

*Abl.* **terrīs**, *by, with, from lands*

**insula** (ēēn'sōō là), *an island*

**insula** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **insula**, *an island*

*Gen.* **insulae**, *of an island*

*Dat.* **insulae**, *to, for an island*

*Acc.* **insulam**, *an island*

*Voc.* **insula**, *O island*

*Abl.* **insulā**, *by, with, from an island*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **insulae**, *islands*

*Gen.* **insulārum**, *of islands*

*Dat.* **insulis**, *to, for islands*

*Acc.* **insulās**, *islands*

*Voc.* **insulae**, *O islands*

*Abl.* **insulis**, *by, with, from islands*



## VOCABULARY

### Adjectives, Feminine

NOM. SING.	NOM. PLUR.
<i>ārida,</i>	<i>āridae, dry, parched</i>
<i>aurea,</i>	<i>aureae, golden</i>
<i>frigida,</i>	<i>frigidae, cold</i>
<i>lāta,</i>	<i>lātae, broad, wide</i>
<i>longa,</i>	<i>longae, long</i>
<i>lūcida,</i>	<i>lūcidae, sparkling</i>
<i>plāna,</i>	<i>plānae, level</i>
<i>rāra,</i>	<i>rārae, thin, rare</i>
<i>rotunda,</i>	<i>rotundae, round</i>
<i>splendida,</i>	<i>splendidae, splendid</i>

M XVIII  
 37 LXXV  
 L XXXV

ET VENIT AD  
 EUM LEPRO-  
 SUS DEPRÆ-  
 CANSEUM.  
 ET GENU FLEXO DIXIT:  
 SI UIS POTES ME  
 MUNDARE: IHS AUTĒ  
 MISERTUS EIUS.  
 EXTENDIT MANUM  
 SUAM ET TANGENS  
 EUM. ATILLI: UOLO  
 MUNDARE:

A PASSAGE FROM THE BIBLE  
 (Written in Latin.)

### Sentences.

#### A

1. Corōna est splendida.
  2. Gemma est lūcida.
  3. Insula est rotunda.
  4. Terra est lāta.
  5. Corōna est aurea.
  6. Gemma est rāra.
  7. Insula est longa.
- 
8. The country is cold.
  9. The island is level.
  10. The land is parched.

#### B

1. Corōnae sunt splendidae.
  2. Gemmae sunt lūcidae.
  3. Insulae sunt rotundae.
  4. Terrae sunt lātae.
  5. Corōnae sunt aureae.
  6. Gemmae sunt rārae.
  7. Insulae sunt longae.
- 
8. The countries are cold.
  9. The islands are level.
  10. The lands are dry.

## MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

**scriba** (skrēē'bà), *a clerk*

**scriba** is a Noun, Masc., First Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **scriba**, *a clerk*

*Gen.* **scribae**, *of a clerk*

*Dat.* **scribae**, *to, for a clerk*

*Acc.* **scribam**, *a clerk*

*Voc.* **scriba**, *O clerk*

*Abl.* **scribā**, *by, with, from a clerk*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **scribae**, *clerks*

*Gen.* **scribārum**, *of clerks*

*Dat.* **scribis**, *to, for clerks*

*Acc.* **scribās**, *clerks*

*Voc.* **scribae**, *O clerks*

*Abl.* **scribis**, *by, with, from clerks*

**nauta** (now'tà), *a sailor*

**nauta** is a Noun, Masc., First Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **nauta**, *a sailor*

*Gen.* **nautae**, *of a sailor*

*Dat.* **nautae**, *to, for a sailor*

*Acc.* **nautam**, *a sailor*

*Voc.* **nauta**, *O sailor*

*Abl.* **nautā**, *by, with, from a sailor*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **nautae**, *sailors*

*Gen.* **nautārum**, *of sailors*

*Dat.* **nautis**, *to, for sailors*

*Acc.* **nautās**, *sailors*

*Voc.* **nautae**, *O sailors*

*Abl.* **nautis**, *by, with, from sailors*

**agricola** (à gri'cò là), *a farmer*

**agricola** is a Noun, Masc., First Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **agricola**, *a farmer*

*Gen.* **agricolae**, *of a farmer*

*Dat.* **agricolae**, *to, for a farmer*

*Acc.* **agricolam**, *a farmer*

*Voc.* **agricola**, *O farmer*

*Abl.* **agricolā**, *by, with, from a farmer*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **agricolae**, *farmers*

*Gen.* **agricolārum**, *of farmers*

*Dat.* **agricolis**, *to, for farmers*

*Acc.* **agricolās**, *farmers*

*Voc.* **agricolae**, *O farmers*

*Abl.* **agricolis**, *by, with, from farmers*

**auriga** (ow rēe'gà), *a charioteer*

**auriga** is a Noun, Masc., First Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **auriga**, *a charioteer*

*Gen.* **aurigae**, *of a charioteer*

*Dat.* **aurigae**, *to, for a charioteer*

*Acc.* **aurigam**, *a charioteer*

*Voc.* **auriga**, *O charioteer*

*Abl.* **aurigā**, *by, with, from a charioteer*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **aurigae**, *charioteers*

*Gen.* **aurigārum**, *of charioteers*

*Dat.* **aurigis**, *to, for charioteers*

*Acc.* **aurigās**, *charioteers*

*Voc.* **aurigae**, *O charioteers*

*Abl.* **aurigis**, *by, with, from charioteers*

NOTE.—Nouns of this class have a Feminine form with a Masculine meaning. Some of them were brought from Greece very long ago.

## VOCABULARY

### Adjectives, Masculine

NOM. SING.	NOM. PLUR.
<b>benignus,</b>	<b>benigni,</b> <i>kind</i>
<b>doctus,</b>	<b>docti,</b> <i>learned</i>
<b>ignārus,</b>	<b>ignāri,</b> <i>ignorant</i>
<b>ignāvus,</b>	<b>ignāvi,</b> <i>lazy</i>
<b>industrius,</b>	<b>industrii,</b> <i>industrious</i>
<b>injustus,</b>	<b>injusti,</b> <i>unjust</i>
<b>promptus,</b>	<b>prompti,</b> <i>prompt</i>
<b>superbus,</b>	<b>superbi,</b> <i>proud</i>
<b>timidus,</b>	<b>timidi,</b> <i>timid</i>
<b>validus,</b>	<b>validi,</b> <i>strong</i>

### Table of Terminations

S.		
N.	<b>agri'cola,</b>	<i>a farmer (subj.)</i>
G.	<b>ae,</b>	<i>of a</i>
D.	<b>ae,</b>	<i>to, for</i>
Ac.	<b>am,</b>	<i>a (....) (obj.)</i>
V.	<b>a,</b>	<i>O</i>
Ab.	<b>ā,</b>	<i>by, with, from</i>
PL.		
N.	<b>ae,</b>	<i>farmers (subj.)</i>
G.	<b>ārum,</b>	<i>of</i>
D.	<b>is,</b>	<i>to, for</i>
Ac.	<b>ās,</b>	<i>(....)s (obj.)</i>
V.	<b>ae,</b>	<i>O</i>
Ab.	<b>is,</b>	<i>by, with, from</i>

### Sentences

#### A

1. Agricola est benignus.
2. Agricola est industrius.
3. Agricola est validus.
4. Scriba est timidus.
5. Scriba est doctus.
6. Scriba est injustus.
7. Nauta est promptus.

#### B

1. Agricolae sunt benigni.
2. Agricolae sunt industrii.
3. Agricolae sunt validi.
4. Scribae sunt timidi.
5. Scribae sunt docti.
6. Scribae sunt injusti.
7. Nautae sunt prompti.

8. The charioteer is lazy.
9. The charioteer is ignorant.
10. The charioteer is proud.

8. The charioteers are lazy.
9. The charioteers are ignorant.
10. The charioteers are proud.

## ROMAN GEOGRAPHY

**Italia** (ē tā'liā), *Italy*

**Italia** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl., Sing. only

**Sing.**

*Nom. Italia, Italy*

*Gen. Italiae, of Italy*

*Dat. Italiae, to, for Italy*

*Acc. Italiam, Italy*

*Voc. Italia, O Italy*

*Abl. Italiā, by, with, from Italy*

**Graecia** (graye'kiā), *Greece*

**Graecia** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl., Sing. only

**Sing.**

*Nom. Graecia, Greece*

*Gen. Graeciae, of Greece*

*Dat. Graeciae, to, for Greece*

*Acc. Graeciam, Greece*

*Voc. Graecia, O Greece*

*Abl. Graeciā, by, with, from Greece*

**Rōma** (rō'mā), *Rome*

**Rōma** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl., Sing. only

**Sing.**

*Nom. Rōma, Rome*

*Gen. Rōmae, of Rome*

*Dat. Rōmae, to, for Rome*

*Acc. Rōmam, Rome*

*Voc. Rōma, O Rome*

*Abl. Rōmā, by, with, from Rome*

**Athēnae** (ā thā'naye), *Athens*

**Athēnae** is a Noun, Fem., First Decl., Plur. only

**Plur.**

*Nom. Athēnae, Athens*

*Gen. Athēnārum, of Athens*

*Dat. Athēnis, to, for Athens*

*Acc. Athēnās, Athens*

*Voc. Athēnae, O Athens*

*Abl. Athēnis, by, with, from Athens*

**Rule of Gender.**—Most names of Countries, Islands, and Towns are Feminine.

### Examples for Declension

**Eurōpa, ae, F. Europe**

**Asia, ae, F. Asia**

**India, ae, F. India**

**Arabia, ae, F., Arabia**

**Italia, ae, F. Italy**

**Graecia, ae, F. Greece**

**Britannia, ae, F. Britain**

**Germānia, ae, F. Germany**

**Sicilia, ae, F. Sicily**

**Palestina, ae, F. Palestine**

**Rōma, ae, F. Rome**

**Flōrentia, ae, F. Florence**

**Trōja, ae, F. Gr. Troy**

**Sparta, ae, F. Gr. Sparta**

**Alexandria, ae, F. Gr. Alexandria**

**Hierosolyma, ōrum, Gr. (N. Pl. 2d) Jerusalem**

**Athēnae, ārum, F. Gr. Athens**

**Pisae, ārum, F. Gr. Pisa**

**Thēbae, ārum, F. Gr. Thebes**

**Syrācūsae, ārum, F. Gr. Syracuse**

**NOTE.**—The selection of Names from the Maps for practice in Declension gives also a knowledge of Roman Geography.



## 2 SECOND DECLENSION—NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

### SECOND DECLENSION. *The o Nouns (ō Stems)*

**Endings and Gender.** { The Genitive Singular of Nouns of the Second Declension ends in **i**.  
The Nominative Singular ends in { **us, er, ir**, Masculine.  
**um**, Neuter.

**hortus** (hor'tōōs), *a garden*

**servus** (ser'wōōs), *a slave*

**hortus** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**servus** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **hort-us**, { *a garden*  
*the garden*

**Gen.** **hort-i**, *of a garden*

**Dat.** **hort-ō**, *to, for a garden*

**Acc.** **hort-um**, *a garden*

**Voc.** **hort-e**, *O garden*

**Abl.** **hort-ō**, *by, with, from a garden*

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **hort-i**, { *gardens*  
*the gardens*

**Gen.** **hort-ōrum**, *of gardens*

**Dat.** **hort-is**, *to, for gardens*

**Acc.** **hort-ōs**, *gardens*

**Voc.** **hort-i**, *O gardens*

**Abl.** **hort-is**, *by, with, from gardens*

**mālus** (mä'lōōs), *an apple-tree*

**mālus** is a Noun, Fem., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **mālus**, *an apple-tree*

**Gen.** **māli**, *of an apple-tree*

**Dat.** **mālō**, *to, for an apple-tree*

**Acc.** **mālum**, *an apple-tree*

**Voc.** **māle**, *O apple-tree*

**Abl.** **mālō**, *by, with, from an apple-tree*

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **māli**, *apple-trees*

**Gen.** **mālōrum**, *of apple-trees*

**Dat.** **mālis**, *to, for apple-trees*

**Acc.** **mālōs**, *apple-trees*

**Voc.** **māli**, *O apple-trees*

**Abl.** **mālis**, *by, with, from apple-trees*

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **servus**, *a slave*

**Gen.** **servi**, *of a slave*

**Dat.** **servō**, *to, for a slave*

**Acc.** **servum**, *a slave*

**Voc.** **serve**, *O slave*

**Abl.** **servō**, *by, with, from a slave*

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **servi**, *slaves*

**Gen.** **servōrum**, *of slaves*

**Dat.** **servis**, *to, for slaves*

**Acc.** **servōs**, *slaves*

**Voc.** **servi**, *O slaves*

**Abl.** **servis**, *by, with, from slaves*

**equus** (ek'wōōs), *a horse*

**equus** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **equus**, *a horse*

**Gen.** **equi**, *of a horse*

**Dat.** **equō**, *to, for a horse*

**Acc.** **equum**, *a horse*

**Voc.** **equē**, *O horse*

**Abl.** **equō**, *by, with, from a horse*

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **equi**, *horses*

**Gen.** **equōrum**, *of horses*

**Dat.** **equis**, *to, for horses*

**Acc.** **equōs**, *horses*

**Voc.** **equi**, *O horses*

**Abl.** **equis**, *by, with, from horses*

# ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

## Table of Terminations

*bonus, good*

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	S.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	<i>N.</i>	bon'us	bon'a	bon'um
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	<i>G.</i>	ī	ae	ī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	<i>D.</i>	ō	ae	ō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	<i>Ac.</i>	um	am	um
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum	<i>V.</i>	e	a	um
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō	<i>Ab.</i>	ō	ā	ō
<b>Plur.</b>				<b>Pl.</b>			
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona	<i>N.</i>	ī	ae	a
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum	<i>G.</i>	ōrum	ārum	ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	<i>D.</i>	īs	īs	īs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona	<i>Ac.</i>	ōs	ās	a
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona	<i>V.</i>	ī	ae	a
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	<i>Ab.</i>	īs	īs	īs

**Rule.**—The Adjective must agree with its Noun in Gender, Number, and Case, but need not in Declension.

## Examples for Declension

*altus, alta, altum, high, deep*

*lātus, lāta, lātum, broad, wide*

*magnus, magna, magnum, great, large*

*benignus, benigna, benignum, kind*

*splendidus, splendida, splendidum, bright*

*timidus, timida, timidum, timid*

## Adjective Phrases

(Emphatic position)

### A

1. bonus hortus
2. bonī hortī
3. bonus equus
4. bonī equī
5. bonus servus
6. bonī servī
7. bonus poēta
8. bonī poētae
9. bonus nauta
10. bonī nautae

### B

1. bona fēmina
2. bonae fēminae
3. bona puella
4. bonae puellae
5. bona rēgina
6. bonae rēginae
7. bona terra
8. bonae terrae
9. bona mālus
10. bonae māli

### C

1. ignārus servus
2. ignāvī servī
3. industrius agricola
4. industriī agricolae
5. superbus auriga
6. superba rēgina
7. ignārus nauta
8. parva puella
9. antiqua porta
10. parvae insulae

11. a good farmer
12. good farmers
13. a good charioteer
14. good charioteers

11. a kind woman
12. kind women
13. a just queen
14. unjust queens

11. an industrious woman
12. industrious women
13. a large garden
14. a proud slave



# 2

## I NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

**gladius** (glād'ī ōōs), *a sword*

**gladius** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

<b>Nom.</b>	<b>gladi-us,</b> { <i>a sword</i> <i>the sword</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>gladi-i</b> or <b>gladi,</b> <i>of a sword</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>gladi-ō,</b> <i>to, for a sword</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>gladi-um,</b> <i>a sword</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>gladi-e</b> or <b>gladi,</b> <i>O sword</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>gladi-ō,</b> <i>by, with, from a sword</i>

**Plur.**

<b>Nom.</b>	<b>gladi-i,</b> { <i>swords</i> <i>the swords</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>gladi-ōrum,</b> <i>of swords</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>gladi-is,</b> <i>to, for swords</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>gladi-ōs,</b> <i>swords</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>gladi-i,</b> <i>O swords</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>gladi-is,</b> <i>by, with, from swords</i>

**nuntius** (nōōn'tī ōōs), *a messenger*

**nuntius** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

<b>Nom.</b>	<b>nuntius,</b> <i>a messenger</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>nuntiī</b> or <b>nunti,</b> <i>of a messenger</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>nuntiō,</b> <i>to, for a messenger</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>nuntium,</b> <i>a messenger</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>nuntie</b> or <b>nunti,</b> <i>O messenger</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>nuntiō,</b> <i>by, with, from a messenger</i>

**Plur.**

<b>Nom.</b>	<b>nuntiī,</b> <i>messengers</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>nuntiōrum,</b> <i>of messengers</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>nuntiis,</b> <i>to, for messengers</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>nuntiōs,</b> <i>messengers</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>nuntiī,</b> <i>O messengers</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>nuntiis,</b> <i>by, with, from messengers</i>

**fluvius** (flōō'wī ōōs), *a river*

**fluvius** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

<b>Nom.</b>	<b>fluvius,</b> <i>a river</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>fluvīi</b> or <b>fluvī,</b> <i>of a river</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>fluvīō,</b> <i>to, for a river</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>fluvium,</b> <i>a river</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>fluvie</b> or <b>fluvī,</b> <i>O river</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>fluvīō,</b> <i>by, with, from a river</i>

**Plur.**

<b>Nom.</b>	<b>fluvīi,</b> <i>rivers</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>fluvīōrum,</b> <i>of rivers</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>fluvīis,</b> <i>to, for rivers</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>fluvīōs,</b> <i>rivers</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>fluvīi,</b> <i>O rivers</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>fluvīis,</b> <i>by, with, from rivers</i>

**genius** (gēn'ī ōōs), *a genius*

**genius** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

<b>Nom.</b>	<b>genius,</b> <i>a genius</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>genīi</b> or <b>genī,</b> <i>of a genius</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>geniō,</b> <i>to, for a genius</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>genium,</b> <i>a genius</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>genī,</b> <i>O genius</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>geniō,</b> <i>by, with, from a genius</i>

**Plur.**

<b>Nom.</b>	<b>genīi,</b> <i>genii</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>geniōrum,</b> <i>of genii</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>geniis,</b> <i>to, for genii</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>geniōs,</b> <i>genii</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>genīi,</b> <i>O genii</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>geniis,</b> <i>by, with, from genii</i>

## HOW TO PARSE NOUNS, WITH DIAGRAM

Noun, Masc. Sec'd Gen. Plur.

serv ōrum  
slave *s, of*

N. M. 2 D. S.

hort ō  
*a garden to*

N. M. 2 Ab. P.

hort is  
*garden s, from*

N. M. 2 Ac. S.

equ um  
*a horse*

N. F. 2 Ac. P.

māl ōs  
*apple-tree s*

### Words

(to parse.)

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. horti      | 11. puellae   |
| 2. horte      | 12. rēginam   |
| 3. servum     | 13. scribā    |
| 4. servōs     | 14. nautis    |
| 5. equis      | 15. agricolās |
| 6. portās     | 16. corōna    |
| 7. rosā       | 17. terrā     |
| 8. poētae     | 18. gemmis    |
| 9. violis     | 19. insulae   |
| 10. fēmīnārum | 20. Rōmam     |

## Tables of Terminations

**S.**

N. hor'tus, *a garden (subj.)*

G. ī, *of a*

D. ō, *to, for*

Ac. um, *a ( . . . ) (obj.)*

V. e, *O*

Ab. ō, *by, with, from*

**Pl.**

N. ī, *gardens (subj.)*

G. ōrum, *of*

D. is *to, for*

Ac. ōs, *( . . . )s (obj.)*

V. ī, *O*

Ab. is, *by, with, from*

**S.**

N. gla'di'us, *a sword (subj.)*

\*G. ī, *of a*

D. ō, *to, for*

Ac. um, *a ( . . . ) (obj.)*

V. e, *O*

Ab. ō, *by, with, from*

**Pl.**

N. ī, *swords (subj.)*

G. ōrum, *of*

D. is, *to, for*

Ac. ōs, *( . . . )s (obj.)*

V. ī, *O*

Ab. is, *by, with, from*

\* Cicero frequently said gla'di

## 2

**ager** (ă'gěr), *a field*

**ager** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom. ager, a field*

*Gen. agrī, of a field*

*Dat. agrō, to, for a field*

*Acc. agrum, a field*

*Voc. ager, O field*

*Abl. agrō, by, with, from a field*

**Plur.**

*Nom. agrī, fields*

*Gen. agrōrum, of fields*

*Dat. agrīs, to, for fields*

*Acc. agrōs, fields*

*Voc. agrī, O fields*

*Abl. agrīs, by, with, from fields*

**magister** (māgis'těr), *a master*

**magister** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom. magister, a master*

*Gen. magistrī, of a master*

*Dat. magistrō, to, for a master*

*Acc. magistrum, a master*

*Voc. magister, O master*

*Abl. magistrō, by, with, from a master*

**Plur.**

*Nom. magistrī, masters*

*Gen. magistrōrum, of masters*

*Dat. magistrīs, to, for masters*

*Acc. magistrōs, masters*

*Voc. magistrī, O masters*

*Abl. magistrīs, by, with, from masters*

**caper** (kā'pěr), *a goat*

**caper** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom. caper, a goat*

*Gen. caprī, of a goat*

*Dat. caprō, to, for a goat*

*Acc. caprum, a goat*

*Voc. caper, O goat*

*Abl. caprō, by, with, from a goat*

**Plur.**

*Nom. caprī, goats*

*Gen. caprōrum, of goats*

*Dat. caprīs, to, for goats*

*Acc. caprōs, goats*

*Voc. caprī, O goats*

*Abl. caprīs, by, with, from goats*

**minister** (mīnis'těr), *a servant*

**minister** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom. minister, a servant*

*Gen. ministrī, of a servant*

*Dat. ministrō, to, for a servant*

*Acc. ministrum, a servant*

*Voc. minister, O servant*

*Abl. ministrō, by, with, from a servant*

**Plur.**

*Nom. ministrī, servants*

*Gen. ministrōrum, of servants*

*Dat. ministrīs, to, for servants*

*Acc. ministrōs, servants*

*Voc. ministrī, O servants*

*Abl. ministrīs, by, with, from servants*

# ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Table of Terminations

*niger, black*

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	niger	nigra	nigrum
Gen.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
Dat.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
Acc.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
Voc.	niger	nigra	nigrum
Abl.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

S.	M.	F.	N.
N.	niger	nigra	nigrum
G.	nigrī	ae	ī
D.	ō	ae	ō
Ac.	um	am	um
V.	niger	a	um
Ab.	nigrō	ā	ō

Plur.			
Nom.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
Gen.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
Dat.	nigris	nigris	nigris
Acc.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
Voc.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
Abl.	nigris	nigris	nigris

Pl.			
N.	ī	ae	a
G.	ōrum	ārum	ōrum
D.	īs	īs	īs
Ac.	ōs	ās	a
V.	ī	ae	a
Ab.	īs	īs	īs

## Examples for Declension

*niger, nigra, nigrum, black*

*āter, ātra, ātrum, dark*

*aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick, ill*

*integer, integra, integrum, whole*

*piger, pigra, pigrum, slothful, slow*

*pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful*

*ruber, rubra, rubrum, red, ruddy*

*sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred*

## Adjective Phrases

*Normal position*

A	B
1. ager sacer	1. agrī sacri
2. caper niger	2. capri nigri
3. magister aeger	3. magistrī aegri
4. minister piger	4. ministri pigri
5. fēmina aegra	4. fēminae aegrae
6. puella pulchra	6. puellae pulchrae
7. equus niger	7. equi nigri
8. rēgina pulchra	8. rēginae pulchrae
9. scriba piger	9. scribae pigri
10. gemma pulchra	10. gemmae pulchrae
11. rosa alba	11. rosae albae
12. viola pulchra	12. violae pulchrae
13. agricola aeger	13. agricolae aegri
14. nauta piger	14. nautae pigri
15. mālus pulchra	15. māli pulchrae

NOTE.—In conversation and composition the Romans usually put the Adjective after the Noun; but when desiring to emphasize, as when speaking earnestly or excitedly, they placed the Adjective before the Noun.

Rule.—Normal Position, Adjective second.  
Emphatic Position, Adjective first.

## 2

**puer** (pöö'ěr), *a boy*

**puer** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **puer**, *a boy*

*Gen.* **puer-i**, *of a boy*

*Dat.* **puer-ō**, *to, for a boy*

*Acc.* **puer-um**, *a boy*

*Voc.* **puer**, *O boy*

*Abl.* **puer-ō**, *by, with, from a boy*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **puer-i**, *boys*

*Gen.* **puer-ōrum**, *of boys*

*Dat.* **puer-is**, *to, for boys*

*Acc.* **puer-ōs**, *boys*

*Voc.* **puer-i**, *O boys*

*Abl.* **puer-is**, *by, with, from boys*

**gener** (gěn'ěr), *a son-in-law*

**gener** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **gener**, *a son-in-law*

*Gen.* **generi**, *of a son-in-law*

*Dat.* **generō**, *to, for a son-in-law*

*Acc.* **generum**, *a son-in-law*

*Voc.* **gener**, *O son-in-law*

*Abl.* **generō**, *by, with, from a son-in-law*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **generi**, *sons-in-law*

*Gen.* **generōrum**, *of sons-in-law*

*Dat.* **generis**, *to, for sons-in-law*

*Acc.* **generōs**, *sons-in-law*

*Voc.* **generi**, *O sons-in-law*

*Abl.* **generis**, *by, with, from sons-in-law*

**vir** (wěer), *a man*

**vir** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **vir**, *a man*

*Gen.* **virī**, *of a man*

*Dat.* **virō**, *to, for a man*

*Acc.* **virum**, *a man*

*Voc.* **vir**, *O man*

*Abl.* **virō**, *by, with, from a man*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **virī**, *men*

*Gen.* **virōrum**, *of men*

*Dat.* **virīs**, *to, for men*

*Acc.* **virōs**, *men*

*Voc.* **virī**, *O men*

*Abl.* **virīs**, *by, with, from men*

**socer** (sō'kěr), *a father-in-law*

**socer** is a Noun, Masc., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **socer**, *a father-in-law*

*Gen.* **soceri**, *of a father-in-law*

*Dat.* **socerō**, *to, for a father-in-law*

*Acc.* **socerum**, *a father-in-law*

*Voc.* **socer**, *O father-in-law*

*Abl.* **socerō**, *by, with, from a father-in-law*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **soceri**, *fathers-in-law*

*Gen.* **socerōrum**, *of fathers-in-law*

*Dat.* **soceris**, *to, for fathers-in-law*

*Acc.* **socerōs**, *fathers-in-law*

*Voc.* **soceri**, *O fathers-in-law*

*Abl.* **soceris**, *by, with, from fathers-in-law*

# ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

tener, tender

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	tener	tenera	tenerum
Gen.	teneri	tenerae	teneri
Dat.	tenerō	tenerae	tenerō
Acc.	tenerum	teneram	tenerum
Voc.	tener	tenera	tenerum
Abl.	tenerō	tenerā	tenerō
Plur.			
Nom.	teneri	tenerae	tenera
Gen.	tenerōrum	tenerārum	tenerōrum
Dat.	teneris	teneris	teneris
Acc.	tenerōs	tenerās	tenera
Voc.	teneri	tenerae	tenera
Abl.	teneris	teneris	teneris

Table of Terminations

S.	M.	F.	N.
N.	tener	tenera	tenerum
G.	i	ae	i
D.	ō	ae	ō
Ac.	um	am	um
V.	tener	a	um
Ab.	ō	ā	ō
Pl.			
N.	i	ae	a
G.	ōrum	ārum	ōrum
D.	is	is	is
Ac.	ōs	ās	a
V.	i	ae	a
Ab.	is	is	is

## Examples for Declension

tener,	tenera,	tenerum, tender
asper,	aspera,	asperum, rough, harsh
liber,	libera,	liberum, free
miser,	misera,	miserum, wretched, miserable
satur,	satura,	saturum, full of food
corniger,	cornigera,	cornigerum, horned, horn-wearing
dexter,	dextera,	dexterum, { handy, on the right,
dexter,	dextra,	dextrum, { dexterous, favorable

## Phrases

## Sentences

- | A                         | B                           |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. puer asper             | 1. Puer est miser.          |
| 2. puella tenera          | 2. Vir est dexter.          |
| 3. pueri asperi           | 3. Fēminae sunt tenerae.    |
| 4. puellae tenerae        | 4. Terrae sunt asperae.     |
| 5. vir miser              | 5. Aurigae sunt dexteri.    |
| 6. fēmina misera          | 6. Socer est asper.         |
| 7. viri dexteri           | 7. Gener est miser.         |
| 8. fēminae miserae        | 8. Magistri sunt asperi.    |
| 9. viola tenera           | 9. Ministri sunt miseri.    |
| 10. terrae asperae        | 10. Rosae sunt tenerae.     |
| 11. a horned goat         | 11. The man is dexterous.   |
| 12. a free man            | 12. The boy is free.        |
| 13. a proud father-in-law | 13. The son-in-law is kind. |
| 14. miserable men         | 14. The fields are rough.   |
| 15. a handy sailor        | 15. Goats are horned.       |

NOTE.—In parsing orally an Adjective may be classed as Adj. 1-2, declined like **niger**, or like **tener**.

## 2

### NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

**regnum** (reg'nōom), *a kingdom*

**regnum** is a Noun, Neut., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **regn-um**, *a kingdom*

*Gen.* **regn-ī**, *of a kingdom*

*Dat.* **regn-ō**, *to, for a kingdom*

*Acc.* **regn-um**, *a kingdom*

*Voc.* **regn-um**, *O kingdom*

*Abl.* **regn-ō**, *by, with, from a kingdom*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **regn-a**, *kingdoms*

*Gen.* **regn-ōrum**, *of kingdoms*

*Dat.* **regn-is**, *to, for kingdoms*

*Acc.* **regn-a**, *kingdoms*

*Voc.* **regn-a**, *O kingdoms*

*Abl.* **regn-is**, *by, with, from kingdoms*

**saxum** (sax'ōom), *a rock*

**saxum** is a Noun, Neut., Second Decl

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **saxum**, *a rock*

*Gen.* **saxī**, *of a rock*

*Dat.* **saxō**, *to, for a rock*

*Acc.* **saxum**, *a rock*

*Voc.* **saxum**, *O rock*

*Abl.* **saxō**, *by, with, from a rock*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **saxa**, *rocks*

*Gen.* **saxōrum**, *of rocks*

*Dat.* **saxis**, *to, for rocks*

*Acc.* **saxa**, *rocks*

*Voc.* **saxa**, *O rocks*

*Abl.* **saxis**, *by, with, from rocks*

**templum** (tem'plōom), *a temple*

**templum** is a Noun, Neut., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **templum**, *a temple*

*Gen.* **templī**, *of a temple*

*Dat.* **templō**, *to, for a temple*

*Acc.* **templum**, *a temple*

*Voc.* **templum**, *O temple*

*Abl.* **templō**, *by, with, from a temple*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **templa**, *temples*

*Gen.* **templōrum**, *of temples*

*Dat.* **templis**, *to, for temples*

*Acc.* **templa**, *temples*

*Voc.* **templa**, *O temples*

*Abl.* **templis**, *by, with, from temples*

**praemium** (praye'me ōom), *a reward*

**praemium** is a Noun, Neut., Second Decl.

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **praemium**, *a reward*

*Gen.* **praemiī** or **praemi**, *of a reward*

*Dat.* **praemiō**, *to, for a reward*

*Acc.* **praemium**, *a reward*

*Voc.* **praemium**, *O reward*

*Abl.* **praemiō**, *by, with, from a reward*

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **praemia**, *rewards*

*Gen.* **praemiōrum**, *of rewards*

*Dat.* **praemiīs**, *to, for rewards*

*Acc.* **praemia**, *rewards*

*Voc.* **praemia**, *O rewards*

*Abl.* **praemiīs**, *by, with, from rewards*



## HOW TO PARSE PHRASES, WITH DIAGRAM

**Phrase:** bonōrum gladiōrum

Adj. 1-2 | G. P. M.      N. M. 2 | G. P.

<b>bonōrum</b>	<b>gladiōrum</b>
<i>good</i>	<i>sword's of</i>

**Phrase:** bonae terrae

Adj. 1-2 | D. S. F.      N. F. 1 | D. S.

<b>bonae</b>	<b>terrae</b>
<i>good</i>	<i>a country of</i>

**Phrase:** fluviis magnis

I Noun, M. 2 | Ab. P.      Adj. 1-2 | Ab. P. M.

<b>fluviis</b>	<b>magnis</b>
<i>river's by</i>	<i>great</i>

## Table of Terminations

**S.**

**N.** reg'n **um,** *a kingdom* (Subj.)

**G.** **i,** *of a*

**D.** **ō,** *to, for*

**Ac.** **um,** *a (....)* (Obj.)

**V.** **um,** *O*

**Ab.** **ō,** *by, with, from*

**Pl.**

**N.** **a,** *kingdoms* (Subj.)

**G.** **ōrum,** *of*

**D.** **is,** *to, for*

**Ac.** **a,** *(....)s* (Obj.)

**V.** **a,** *O*

**Ab.** **is,** *by, with, from*

### Phrases

### Words

**A** *To parse*

**B** *To parse*

1. hortus bonus

1. equi

2. terra bona

2. insulae

3. praemium bonum

3. praemia

4. fluvius magnus

4. gladii

5. corōna magna

5. gemmae

6. saxum magnum

6. regna

7. poēta antiquus

7. nuntii

8. rēgīna antiqua

8. fēminae

9. templum antiquum

9. templa

10. mālus antiqua

10. agricolae

### Phrases

### Words

**C** *To parse*

**D** *To parse*

1. hortōrum bonōrum

1. equis

2. terrārum bonārum

2. insulis

3. praemiōrum bonōrum

3. praemiis

4. fluviis magnis

4. gladiis

5. corōnis magnis

5. gemmis

6. saxis magnis

6. regnis

7. poētās antiquōs

7. nuntiōs

8. rēgīnās antiquās

8. fēminās

9. templa antiqua

9. saxa

10. mālōs antiquās

10. aurigās

**THIRD DECLENSION.** *The consonant and i Nouns, (consonant Stems, i Stems)*

**Endings.**—The Genitive Singular of Nouns of the Third ends in **is**.

The Nominative Singular ends in **various letters** (originally only in **s**).

**Gender.**—Nouns of the Third are of all three Genders.

They may be arranged in **ten** classes according to their

Stem-letter, viz.:	{	Classes 1, 2, 3, 4, <b>l, m, n, r</b> , called Liquid (or flowing) stems,			} consonant stems.
		5,	<b>c</b> or <b>g</b> ,	called Guttural (or throat) stems,	
		6,	<b>b</b> or <b>p</b> ,	called Labial (or lip) stems,	
		7,	<b>d</b> or <b>t</b> ,	called Dental (or tooth) stems,	
		8,	<b>i</b> (monosyllables increasing),	} vowel stems.	
		9,	<b>i</b> (polysyllables not increasing),		
		10,	<b>v</b> (= the consonant <i>u</i> ),		

**CLASS 1—Nouns in *l*, Genitive *l-is***

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **sōl**, the sun, **Masc.**

*Gen.* **sōlis**, of the sun

*Dat.* **sōli**, to, for the sun

*Acc.* **sōlem**, the sun

*Voc.* **sōl**, O sun

*Abl.* **sōle**, by, with, from the sun

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **sōlēs**, suns

*Gen.* ..... (mostly, time from sun to sun, —days.)

*Dat.* **sōlibus**,

*Acc.* **sōlēs**,

*Voc.* **sōlēs**,

*Abl.* **sōlibus**,

**Sing.**

*Nom.* **cōnsul**, the consul, **Masc.**

*Gen.* **cōnsulis**, of the consul

*Dat.* **cōnsuli**, to, for the consul

*Acc.* **cōnsulem**, the consul

*Voc.* **cōnsul**, O consul

*Abl.* **cōnsule**, by, with, from the consul

**Plur.**

*Nom.* **cōnsulēs**, consuls

*Gen.* **cōnsulum**, of consuls

*Dat.* **cōnsulibus**, to, for consuls

*Acc.* **cōnsulēs**, consuls

*Voc.* **cōnsulēs**, O consuls

*Abl.* **cōnsulibus**, by, with, from consuls

# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

## Adj's, 1-2

<i>just,</i>	<i>justus, a, um</i>
<i>unjust,</i>	<i>injustus, a, um</i>
<i>good,</i>	<i>bonus, a, um</i>
<i>kind,</i>	<i>benignus, a, um</i>
<i>learned,</i>	<i>doctus, a, um</i>
<i>proud,</i>	<i>superbus, a, um</i>
<i>industrious,</i>	<i>industrius, a, um</i>
<i>ill, sick,</i>	<i>aeger, gra, grum</i>
<i>wretched,</i>	<i>miser, era, erum</i>
<i>harsh, rough,</i>	<i>asper, era, erum</i>
<i>bad,</i>	<i>malus, a, um</i>

## Table of Terminations

<b>S.</b>		
<i>N.</i>	<i>cōnsul</i>	<i>the consul (subj.)</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>of the</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>to, for</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>em,</i>	<i>the ( . . . ) (obj.)</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>cōnsul</i>	<i>O</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>by, with, from</i>
<b>Pl.</b>		
<i>N.</i>	<i>ēs,</i>	<i>the consuls (subj.)</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>um,</i>	<i>of the</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ibus,</i>	<i>to, for</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ēs,</i>	<i>the ( . . . )s (obj.)</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>ēs,</i>	<i>O</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>ibus,</i>	<i>by, with, from</i>

## Sentences

Nom., Sing.

**A** Write in Latin and English

1. The consul is just.
2. The consul is unjust.
3. The consul is good.
4. The consul is kind.
5. The consul is learned.
6. The consul is proud.
7. The consul is industrious.

8. Cōnsul est aeger.
9. Cōnsul est miser.
10. Cōnsul est asper.

Nom., Sing.

**B** Read in Latin and English.

1. The sun is old.
2. The sun is large.
3. The sun is beautiful.
4. The sun is bright.
5. The sun is round.
6. The sun is golden.
7. The sun is high.

8. Puer est liber.
9. Rēgina est superba.
10. Agricola est industrius.

### 3 CLASS 2.—Nouns in *s*, Genitive *m-is*

(only one)

Sing.	
Nom.	<b>hiems</b> , <i>winter</i> . F.
Gen.	<b>hiemis</b> , <i>of winter</i>
Dat.	<b>hiemī</b> , <i>to, for winter</i>
Acc.	<b>hiemem</b> , <i>winter</i>
Voc.	<b>hiems</b> , <i>O winter</i>
Abl.	<b>hieme</b> , <i>by, with, from winter</i>
Plur.	
Nom.	<b>hiemēs</b> , <i>winters</i>
Gen.	<b>hienum</b> , <i>of winters</i> (rare)
Dat.	<b>hiemibus</b> , <i>to, for winters</i> (rare)
Acc.	<b>hiemēs</b> , <i>winters</i>
Voc.	<b>hiemēs</b> , <i>O winters</i>
Abl.	<b>hiemibus</b> , <i>by, with, from winters</i> (rare)

### Table of Terminations

S.	
N.	<b>virgō</b> , <i>a maiden</i> (subj.)
G.	<b>inis</b> , <i>of a</i>
D.	<b>inī</b> , <i>to, for</i>
Ac.	<b>inem</b> , <i>a</i> ( . . . ) (obj.)
V.	<b>ō</b> , <i>O</i>
Ab.	<b>ine</b> , <i>by, with, from</i>
Pl.	
N.	<b>inēs</b> , <i>maidens</i> (subj.)
G.	<b>inum</b> , <i>of</i>
D.	<b>inibus</b> , <i>to, for</i>
Ac.	<b>inēs</b> , ( . . . )s (obj.)
V.	<b>inēs</b> , <i>O</i>
Ab.	<b>inibus</b> , <i>by, with, from</i>

### CLASS 3.—Nouns in *n* and *o*, Genitive *n-is*

(*n* lost.)

Sing.	
Nom.	<b>virgō</b> , <i>a maiden</i> . F.
Gen.	<b>virginis</b> , <i>of a maiden</i>
Dat.	<b>virginī</b> , <i>to, for a maiden</i>
Acc.	<b>virginem</b> , <i>a maiden</i>
Voc.	<b>virgō</b> , <i>O maiden</i>
Abl.	<b>virgine</b> , <i>by, with, from a maiden</i>
Plur.	
Nom.	<b>virginēs</b> , <i>maidens</i>
Gen.	<b>virginum</b> , <i>of maidens</i>
Dat.	<b>virginibus</b> , <i>to, for maidens</i>
Acc.	<b>virginēs</b> , <i>maidens</i>
Voc.	<b>virginēs</b> , <i>O maidens</i>
Abl.	<b>virginibus</b> , <i>by, with, from maidens</i>

(*n* lost.)

Sing.	
Nom.	<b>leō</b> , <i>the lion</i> . M.
Gen.	<b>leōnis</b> , <i>of the lion</i>
Dat.	<b>leōnī</b> , <i>to, for the lion</i>
Acc.	<b>leōnem</b> , <i>the lion</i>
Voc.	<b>leō</b> , <i>O lion</i>
Abl.	<b>leōne</b> , <i>by, with, from the lion</i>
Plur.	
Nom.	<b>leōnēs</b> , <i>lions</i>
Gen.	<b>leōnum</b> , <i>of lions</i>
Dat.	<b>leōnibus</b> , <i>to, for lions</i>
Acc.	<b>leōnēs</b> , <i>lions</i>
Voc.	<b>leōnēs</b> , <i>O lions</i>
Abl.	<b>leōnibus</b> , <i>by, with, from lions</i>

# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

## Adj's, 1-2

<i>timid,</i>	<i>timidus, a, um</i>
<i>tender,</i>	<i>tener, era, erum</i>
<i>wretched,</i>	<i>miser, era, erum</i>
<i>ill, sick,</i>	<i>aeger, gra, grum</i>
<i>beautiful,</i>	<i>pulcher, chra, chrum</i>
<i>large,</i>	<i>magnus, a, um</i>
<i>old,</i>	<i>antiquus, a, um</i>
<i>proud,</i>	<i>superbus, a, um</i>
<i>strong, stout,</i>	<i>validus, a, um</i>
<i>much, sing. }</i>	<i>multus, a, um</i>
<i>many, plur. }</i>	
<i>yellow,</i>	<i>flāvus, a, um</i>
<i>lazy,</i>	<i>ignāvus, a, um</i>

## Diagram for Parsing English to Latin Sentences

Subj.	Vb.	Pred. Adj.
<i>Maiden s</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>good</i>
<i>Virgin ēs</i>	<i>sunt</i>	<i>bonae</i>
N. F. 3	N. P. 3d. Plur.	Adj. 1-2 N. P. F.

**Rule.**—*The Subject of a Verb is in the Nominative Case.*

**Rule.**—*The Verb agrees with its Subject in Person and Number.*

**Rule.**—*The Predicate Adjective agrees with the Subject Noun of the Verb in Gender, Number, and Case.*

## Sentences

### Nom., Plur., Fem.

**A** *Write in Latin and English; also parse.*

1. The maidens are just.
2. The maidens are good.
3. The maidens are kind.
4. The maidens are proud.
5. The maidens are industrious.
6. The maidens are timid.
7. The maidens are tender.
8. *Virginēs sunt miserae.*
9. *Virginēs sunt aegrae.*
10. *Virginēs sunt pulchrae.*

### Nom., Plur., Masc.

**B** *Read in Latin and English.*

1. Lions are large.
2. Lions are old.
3. Lions are proud.
4. Lions are strong.
5. Lions are many.
6. Lions are yellow.
7. Lions are lazy.
8. *Leōnēs sunt pulchrī.*
9. *Caprī sunt timidi.*
10. *Equī sunt industrii.*

# 3

## CLASS 4.—Nouns in *r*, Genitive *r-is*

### Sing.

*Nom.* **pater**, father. *M.*

*Gen.* **patris**, of a father

*Dat.* **patri**, to, for a father

*Acc.* **patrem**, father

*Voc.* **pater**, O father

*Abl.* **patre**, by, with, from a father

### Plur.

*Nom.* **patrēs**, { fathers  
forefathers

*Gen.* **patrum**, of fathers

*Dat.* **patribus**, to, for fathers

*Acc.* **patrēs**, fathers

*Voc.* **patrēs**, O fathers

*Abl.* **patribus**, by, with, from fathers

### Sing.

*Nom.* **māter**, mother. *F.*

*Gen.* **mātris**, of a mother

*Dat.* **mātri**, to, for a mother

*Acc.* **mātre**m, mother

*Voc.* **māter**, O mother

*Abl.* **mātre**, by, with, from a mother

### Plur.

*Nom.* **mātrēs**, { mothers  
women  
ladies

*Gen.* **mātrum**, of mothers

*Dat.* **mātribus**, to, for mothers

*Acc.* **mātrēs**, mothers

*Voc.* **mātrēs**, O mothers

*Abl.* **mātribus**, by, with, from mothers

### Sing.

*Nom.* **frāter**, brother. *M.*

*Gen.* **frātris**, of a brother

*Dat.* **frātri**, to, for a brother

*Acc.* **frātre**m, brother

*Voc.* **frāter**, O brother

*Abl.* **frātre**, by, with, from a brother

### Plur.

*Nom.* **frātrēs**, brothers

*Gen.* **frātrum**, of brothers

*Dat.* **frātribus**, to, for brothers

*Acc.* **frātrēs**, brothers

*Voc.* **frātrēs**, O brothers

*Abl.* **frātribus**, by, with, from brothers

### Sing.

*Nom.* **soror**, sister. *F.*

*Gen.* **sorōris**, of a sister

*Dat.* **sorōri**, to, for a sister

*Acc.* **sorōre**m, sister

*Voc.* **soror**, O sister

*Abl.* **sorōre**, by, with, from a sister

### Plur.

*Nom.* **sorōrēs**, sisters

*Gen.* **sorōrum**, of sisters

*Dat.* **sorōribus**, to, for sisters

*Acc.* **sorōrēs**, sisters

*Voc.* **sorōrēs**, O sisters

*Abl.* **sorōribus**, by, with, from sisters



PUERI ET PUELLAE ROMAE

### Phrases

#### Genitives

*Write in Latin and English. Normal position.*

- | <b>A</b>             | <b>B</b>               |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. of a good boy     | 1. of good boys        |
| 2. of a good girl    | 2. of good girls       |
| 3. of a good man     | 3. of kind fathers     |
| 4. of a good woman   | 4. of kind mothers     |
| 5. of a good father  | 5. of strong men       |
| 6. of a good mother  | 6. of strong women     |
| 7. of a good brother | 7. of learned brothers |

#### Datives

*Read in Latin and English. Emphatic position.*

- | <b>C</b>             | <b>D</b>               |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. to a good boy     | 1. to good boys        |
| 2. for a good girl   | 2. for good girls      |
| 3. to a good man     | 3. to kind fathers     |
| 4. for a good woman  | 4. for kind mothers    |
| 5. to a good father  | 5. to strong men       |
| 6. for a good mother | 6. for strong women    |
| 7. to a good brother | 7. to learned brothers |

- 
- |                    |                              |                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 8. sorōris bonae   | 8. sorōrum tenerārum         | 8. bonae sorōrī    | 8. teneris sorōribus   |
| 9. virginis bonae  | 9. virginum bonārum          | 9. bonae virgini   | 9. pulchris virginibus |
| 10. agricolae boni | 10. agricolārum<br>validōrum | 10. bonō agricolae | 10. benignis agricolis |





## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

### Adj's, 1-2, Opposites

<i>good,</i>	<i>bonus, a, um</i>
<i>bad,</i>	<i>malus, a, um</i>
<i>great, large,</i>	<i>magnus, a, um</i>
<i>small, little,</i>	<i>parvus, a, um</i>
<i>hot,</i>	<i>calidus, a, um</i>
<i>cold,</i>	<i>frigidus, a, um</i>
<i>brisk, strenuous,</i>	<i>strēnuus, a, um</i>
<i>lazy, idle,</i>	<i>ignāvus, a, um</i>
<i>slothful, slow,</i>	<i>piger, gra, grum</i>
<i>active, busy,</i>	<i>impiger, gra, grum</i>



MILES ROMANUS

### Vocatives

*Write in Latin and English. Normal position.*

*Read in Latin and English. Emphatic position.*

<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>
1. O beautiful flower!	1. O beautiful flowers!	1. O little mouse!	1. O little mice!
2. O beautiful rose!	2. O beautiful roses!	2. O timid mouse!	2. O timid mice!
3. O tender flower!	3. O tender flowers!	3. O great gate!	3. O great gates!
4. O tender violet!	4. O tender violets!	4. O unjust poet!	4. O unjust poets!
5. O strenuous farmer!	5. O strenuous farmers!	5. Idle man!	5. O busy men!
6. O good queen!	6. O good queens!	6. Slothful messenger!	6. Slothful messengers!
7. O kind father!	7. O kind fathers!	7. O lazy river!	7. O broad rivers!
<hr/>			
8. O māter tenera!	8. O mātērē tenerae!	8. O misera virgō!	8. O miserae virginēs!
9. O leō superbe!	9. O leōnēs superbi!	9. O sacrum templum!	9. O sacra templa!
10. O māle mala!	10. Mūsae sacrae!	10. Hiems frigida!	10. Vir Rōmāne!

# 3

## CLASS 5.—Nouns in x (=cs or gs). Genitive c-is or g-is

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **fax**, a torch. F.

**Gen.** **facis**, of a torch

**Dat.** **facī**, to, for a torch

**Acc.** **facem**, a torch

**Voc.** **fax**, O torch

**Abl.** **face**, by, with, from a torch

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **facēs**, torches

**Gen.\*** . . . . .

**Dat.** **facibus**, to, for torches

**Acc.** **facēs**, torches

**Voc.** **facēs**, O torches

**Abl.** **facibus**, by, with, from torches

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **vōx**, the voice. F.

**Gen.** **vōcis**, of the voice

**Dat.** **vōcī**, to, for the voice

**Acc.** **vōcem**, the voice

**Voc.** **vōx**, O voice

**Abl.** **vōce**, by, with, from the voice

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **vōcēs**, voices

**Gen.** **vōcum**, of voices

**Dat.** **vōcibus**, to, for voices

**Acc.** **vōcēs**, voices

**Voc.** **vōcēs**, O voices

**Abl.** **vōcibus**, by, with, from voices

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **lēx**, law. F.

**Gen.** **lēgis**, of law

**Dat.** **lēgī**, to, for law

**Acc.** **lēgem**, law

**Voc.** **lēx**, O law

**Abl.** **lēge**, by, with, from law

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **lēgēs**, the laws

**Gen.** **lēgum**, of laws

**Dat.** **lēgibus**, to, for laws

**Acc.** **lēgēs**, laws

**Voc.** **lēgēs**, O laws

**Abl.** **lēgibus**, by, with, from laws

**Sing.**

**Nom.** **dux**, a leader. C.

**Gen.** **ducis**, of a leader

**Dat.** **ducī**, to, for a leader

**Acc.** **ducem**, a leader

**Voc.** **dux**, O leader

**Abl.** **duce**, by, with, from a leader

**Plur.**

**Nom.** **ducēs**, leaders

**Gen.** **ducum**, of leaders

**Dat.** **ducibus**, to, for leaders

**Acc.** **ducēs**, leaders

**Voc.** **ducēs**, O leaders

**Abl.** **ducibus**, by, with, from leaders

\* Not found. In oral recitation say "wanting."

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

<i>land, country,</i>	<b>terra, ae,</b> N. F. 1
<i>master,</i>	<b>magister, tri,</b> N. M. 2
<i>servant,</i>	<b>minister, tri,</b> N. M. 2
<i>field,</i>	<b>ager, agri,</b> N. M. 2
<i>river,</i>	<b>fluvius, fluvii,</b> N. M. 2
<i>sword,</i>	<b>gladius, gladii,</b> N. M. 2
<i>rock,</i>	<b>saxum, saxi,</b> N. N. 2
<i>maiden,</i>	<b>virgō, inis,</b> N. F. 3
<i>lion,</i>	<b>leō, ōnis,</b> N. M. 3
<i>flower,</i>	<b>flōs, flōris,</b> N. M. 3
<i>custom,</i>	} <b>mōs, mōris,</b> N. M. 3
<i>manner,</i>	
<i>dust,</i>	<b>pulvis, eris,</b> N. M. 3

## Prepositions

<i>from or by</i>	{ <b>ā,</b> before a Noun beginning with a Consonant.
	{ <b>ab,</b> before a Noun beginning with a Vowel or <b>h</b> .

<i>in, on,</i>	<b>in</b> with Ablative.
<i>into, upon,</i>	<b>in</b> with Accusative.
<i>with,</i>	<b>cum</b>

<b>Verbs</b>	{ 3d Pers. Sing. <b>erat, was</b>
	{ 3d Pers. Plur. <b>erant, were</b>

**Rule.**—*The Limiting Noun is put in the Genitive.*

**Rule.**—*Normal position, Genitive second.  
Emphatic position, Genitive first.*

## Phrases

### Abl. Sing.

**A** *Write in Latin and English. Normal position.*

1. By the master of the servants.
2. By the mother of the poet.
3. By the sister of the sailor.
4. By the custom of the consul.
5. By the dust of the field.
6. With the voice of a lion.
7. With a gem of the crown.

8. gladiō nautae.
9. ā patre puellae.
10. ā mātre pueri.

**NOTE.**—Ablatives of person usually require the preposition **ā, ab, from, by, or cum, with**, but they are sometimes used without them.

### Abl. Plur.

**B** *Read in Latin and English. Emphatic position.*

1. By the laws of the country.
2. By the laws of the island.
3. By the laws of Rome.
4. By the voices of the sailors.
5. By the torches of the maidens.
6. With the boys of the country.
7. With the manners of a brother.

8. cum agrōrum flōribus.
9. ab insulārum ducibus.
10. fluviōrum saxi.

**Sing.**Nom. **trabs**, a beam. F.Gen. **trabis**, of a beamDat. **trabī**, to, for a beamAcc. **trabem**, a beamVoc. **trabs**, O beamAbl. **trabe**, by, with, from a beam**Plur.**Nom. **trabēs**, beamsGen. **trabum**, of beamsDat. **trabibus**, to, for beamsAcc. **trabēs**, beamsVoc. **trabēs**, O beamsAbl. **trabibus**, by, with, from beams**Sing.** (also i stems)Nom. **urbs**, a city. F.Gen. **urbis**, of a cityDat. **urbī**, to, for a cityAcc. **urbem**, a cityVoc. **urbs**, O cityAbl. **urbe**, by, with, from a city**Plur.**Nom. **urbēs**, citiesGen. **urbium**, of citiesDat. **urbibus**, to, for citiesAcc. **urbīs**, **ēs**, citiesVoc. **urbēs**, O citiesAbl. **urbibus**, by, with, from cities**Sing.**Nom. **princeps**, the chief. M.Gen. **principis**, of the chiefDat. **principī**, to, for the chiefAcc. **principem**, the chiefVoc. **princeps**, O chiefAbl. **principe**, by, with, from the chief**Plur.**Nom. **principēs**, chiefsGen. **principum**, of chiefsDat. **principibus**, to, for chiefsAcc. **principēs**, chiefsVoc. **principēs**, O chiefsAbl. **principibus**, by, with, from chiefs**Sing.**Nom. **auceps**, a fowler. C.Gen. **aucupis**, of a fowlerDat. **aucupī**, to, for a fowlerAcc. **aucupem**, a fowlerVoc. **auceps**, O fowlerAbl. **aucupe**, by, with, from a fowler**Plur.**Nom. **aucupēs**, bird catchersGen. **aucupum**, of bird catchersDat. **aucupibus**, to, for bird catchersAcc. **aucupēs**, bird catchersVoc. **aucupēs**, O bird catchersAbl. **aucupibus**, by, with, from bird catchers



FORUM ROMANUM

### Phrases

Dat. Sing.

Dat. Plur.

**A** Write in Latin and English. Normal position.

**B** Read in Latin and English. Emphatic position.

1. To the mother of the queen.

1. To the swords of the men.

2. To the sister of the maiden.

2. To the horses of the charioteer.

3. For the father of the farmer.

3. For the farmers of the country.

4. For the brother of the poet.

4. For the mice of the city.

5. For the father-in-law of the slave.

5. For the sons-in-law of the charioteer.

6. For the peace of the country.

6. To the fathers of the city.

7. To the law of the kingdom.

7. For the goats of the farmer.

---

8. ministrō rēginae.

---

8. hortōrum flōribus.

9. scribae cōsulis.

9. corōnārum gemmīs.

10. mōri terrae.

10. urbium principibus.

# 3

## CLASS 7.—Nouns in s, Genitive d-is

### Sing.

Nom.	<b>pēs</b> , a foot. M.
Gen.	<b>pedis</b> , of a foot
Dat.	<b>pedī</b> , to, for a foot
Acc.	<b>pedem</b> , a foot
Voc.	<b>pēs</b> , O foot
Abl.	<b>pede</b> , by, with, from a foot

### Plur.

Nom.	<b>pedēs</b> , feet
Gen.	<b>pedum</b> , of feet
Dat.	<b>pedibus</b> , to, for feet
Acc.	<b>pedēs</b> , feet
Voc.	<b>pedēs</b> , O feet
Abl.	<b>pedibus</b> , by, with, from feet

### Sing.

Nom.	<b>lapis</b> , a stone. M.
Gen.	<b>lapidis</b> , of a stone
Dat.	<b>lapidī</b> , to, for a stone
Acc.	<b>lapidem</b> , a stone
Voc.	<b>lapis</b> , O stone
Abl.	<b>lapide</b> , by, with, from a stone

### Plur.

Nom.	<b>lapidēs</b> , stones
Gen.	<b>lapidum</b> , of stones
Dat.	<b>lapidibus</b> , to, for stones
Acc.	<b>lapidēs</b> , stones
Voc.	<b>lapidēs</b> , O stones
Abl.	<b>lapidibus</b> , by, with, from stones

## CLASS 7 (Continued).—Nouns in s, Genitive t-is

### Sing.

Nom.	<b>miles</b> , a soldier. C.
Gen.	<b>militis</b> , of a soldier
Dat.	<b>militī</b> , to, for a soldier
Acc.	<b>militem</b> , a soldier
Voc.	<b>miles</b> , O soldier
Abl.	<b>milite</b> , by, with, from a soldier

### Plur.

Nom.	<b>militēs</b> , soldiers
Gen.	<b>militum</b> , of soldiers
Dat.	<b>militibus</b> , to, for soldiers
Acc.	<b>militēs</b> , soldiers
Voc.	<b>militēs</b> , O soldiers
Abl.	<b>militibus</b> , by, with, from soldiers

### Sing.

Nom.	<b>virtūs</b> , valor. F.
Gen.	<b>virtūtis</b> , of valor
Dat.	<b>virtūtī</b> , to, for valor
Acc.	<b>virtutem</b> , valor
Voc.	<b>virtūs</b> , O valor
Abl.	<b>virtute</b> , by, with, from valor

### Plur.

Nom.	<b>virtūtēs</b> , virtues.
Gen.	<b>virtutum</b> , of virtues
Dat.	<b>virtutibus</b> , to, for virtues
Acc.	<b>virtūtēs</b> , virtues
Voc.	<b>virtūtēs</b> , O virtues
Abl.	<b>virtutibus</b> , by, with, from virtues



## Diagram for Parsing English to Latin Sentences

Subj.	Obj.	Vb.
queen the	crown a	has
rēgin a	corōn am	habet
N. F. 1   N. S.	N. F. 1   Ac. S.	3. S.

**Rule.**—The Subject of a Verb is in the Nominative Case.

**Rule.**—The Object of a Verb is in the Accusative Case.

**Rule.**—The Verb agrees with its Subject in Person and Number.

**NOTE.**—The Nouns and Verbs in this book are all 3d Person.

**Verbs** { 3d pers. sing. **habet, has**  
3d pers. plur. **habent, have**

**Conjunction** { **et, and**  
**et...et, both...and**



MILES ROMANUS

## Sentences

To Parse

### Singular

**A** Verbs Transitive, having an Object.

1. The girl has a violet and a rose.
2. The queen has both a crown and a gem.
3. The farmer has a horse.
4. The farmer has a field.
5. The boy has a goat.
6. The master has a servant.
7. The sailor has a sister.

8. Princeps virtūtem habet.
9. Dux virtūtem multam habet.
10. Aucespēs vōcem asperam habet.

### Plural

**B** Verbs Transitive, having an Object.

1. The girls have violets and roses.
2. The women have both gems and crowns.
3. The farmers have horses.
4. Farmers have fields.
5. Boys have goats.
6. Masters have servants.
7. The sailors have rewards.

8. Principēs virtūtēs habent.
9. Ducēs virtūtēs multās habent.
10. Aucupēs vōcēs asperās habent.

# 3

## I NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

**CLASS 8.—Nouns in s (Mostly Monosyllables Increasing). Gen. Plur. i-um**

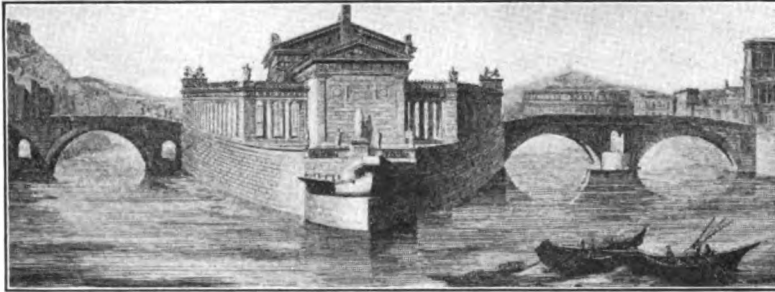
<b>Sing.</b>		<b>Sing.</b>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>arx</b> (ārcs), <i>a citadel</i> . F.	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>dēns</b> , <i>a tooth</i> . M.
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>arcis</b> , <i>of a citadel</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>dentis</b> , <i>of a tooth</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>arci</b> , <i>to, for a citadel</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>dentī</b> , <i>to, for a tooth</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>arcem</b> , <i>a citadel</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>dentem</b> , <i>tooth</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>arx</b> , <i>O citadel</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<b>dēns</b> , <i>O tooth</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>arce</b> , <i>by, with, from a citadel</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>dente</b> , <i>by, with, from a tooth</i>
<b>Plur.</b>		<b>Plur.</b>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>arcēs</b> , <i>citadels</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>dentēs</b> , <i>teeth</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>arcium</b> , <i>of citadels</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>dentium</b> , -um, <i>of teeth</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>arcibus</b> , <i>to, for citadels</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>dentibus</b> , <i>to, for teeth</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>arcis</b> , -ēs, <i>citadels</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>dentēs</b> , <i>teeth</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>arcēs</b> , <i>O citadels</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<b>dentēs</b> , <i>O teeth</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>arcibus</b> , <i>by, with, from citadels</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>dentibus</b> , <i>by, with, from teeth</i>

**CLASS 9.—Nouns in ēs and is (Polysyllables Not Increasing). Gen. Plur. i-um**

<b>Sing.</b>		<b>Sing.</b>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hostis</b> , <i>an enemy</i> (public). C.	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>nūbēs</b> , <i>a cloud</i> . F.
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>hostis</b> , <i>of an enemy</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>nūbis</b> , <i>of a cloud</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>hostī</b> , <i>to, for an enemy</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>nūbī</b> , <i>to, for a cloud</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hostem</b> , <i>an enemy</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>nūbem</b> , <i>a cloud</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>hostis</b> , <i>O enemy</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<b>nūbēs</b> , <i>O cloud</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hoste</b> , <i>by, with, from an enemy</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>nūbe</b> , <i>by, with, from a cloud</i>
<b>Plur.</b>		<b>Plur.</b>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hostēs</b> , <i>enemies</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>nūbēs</b> , <i>clouds</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>hostium</b> , <i>of enemies</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>nūbium</b> , <i>of clouds</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>hostibus</b> , <i>to, for enemies</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>nūbibus</b> , <i>to, for clouds</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hostis</b> , -ēs, <i>enemies</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>nūbis</b> , -ēs, <i>clouds</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>hostēs</b> , <i>O enemies</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<b>nūbēs</b> , <i>O clouds</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hostibus</b> , <i>by, with, from enemies</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>nūbibus</b> , <i>by, with, from clouds</i>

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

<i>city,</i>	<b>urbs, urbis, N. F. 3</b>	<i>garden,</i>	<b>hortus, i, N. M. 2</b>
<i>citadel,</i>	<b>arx, arcis, N. F. 3</b>	<i>island,</i>	<b>insula, ae, N. F. 1</b>
<i>field,</i>	<b>ager, agri, N. M. 2</b>	<i>cloud,</i>	<b>nūbēs, is, N. F. 3</b>
<i>river,</i>	<b>fluvius, ii, N. M. 2</b>	<i>Italy,</i>	<b>Italia, ae, N. F. 1</b>
<i>bridge,</i>	<b>pōns, pontis, N. M. 3</b>	<i>Greece,</i>	<b>Graecia, ae, N. F. 1</b>



INSULA IN TIBERI

### Phrases

*To Write*

**A** *Locative Abl.*

*Terminal Acc.*

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. In the city.    | Into the city.    |
| 2. In the citadel. | Into the citadel. |
| 3. In the field.   | Into the field.   |
| 4. On the river.   | Upon the river.   |
| 5. On the bridge.  | Into the temple.  |
| 6. In the garden.  | Into the garden.  |
| 7. On the island.  | Upon the island.  |

*To Read*

**B** *Locative Abl.*

*Terminal Acc.*

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. In the cities.   | Into the cities.   |
| 2. In the citadels. | Into the citadels. |
| 3. In the fields.   | Into the fields.   |
| 4. On the rivers.   | Upon the rivers.   |
| 5. On the bridges.  | Into the temples.  |
| 6. In the gardens.  | Into the gardens.  |
| 7. On the islands.  | Upon the islands.  |

- |                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| 8. In nūbe.     | In nūbem.    |
| 9. In Italiā.   | In Italiam.  |
| 10. In Graeciā. | In Graeciam. |

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| 8. In nūbibus. | In nūbīs.  |
| 9. In portam.  | In portās. |
| 10. In mālis.  | In mālōs.  |

# 3

## CLASS 10.—Nouns in *s*, Genitive *v-is* (*v* = consonant *u*)

<b>Sing.</b>	<i>snow</i> , F.	<i>Jupiter</i> , M.	<i>an ox or cow</i> , C.	<i>a swine</i> , C.
<b>Nom.</b>	<sup>1</sup> <i>nix</i>	<sup>1</sup> <i>Jūpiter</i>	<sup>1</sup> <i>bōs</i>	<sup>2</sup> <i>sūs</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<i>nivis</i>	<i>Jovis</i>	<i>bovis</i>	<i>suis</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>nivī</i>	<i>Jovī</i>	<i>bovī</i>	<i>sui</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>nivem</i>	<i>Jovem</i>	<i>bovem</i>	<i>suem</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<i>nix</i>	<i>Jūpiter</i>	<i>bōs</i>	<i>sūs</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>nive</i>	<i>Jove</i>	<i>bove</i>	<i>sue</i>
<b>Plur.</b>			<i>oxen, cattle.</i>	
<b>Nom.</b>	<i>nivēs</i>		<i>bovēs</i>	<i>suēs</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<i>nivium</i> , or <i>nivum</i> (rare)		<i>boum</i> , or <i>bovum</i>	<i>suum</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>nivibus</i>		<i>būbus</i> , or <i>bōbus</i>	<i>suibus, sūbus, or subus</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>nivēs</i>		<i>bovēs</i>	<i>suēs</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<i>nivēs</i>		<i>bovēs</i>	<i>suēs</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>nivibus</i>		<i>būbus</i> , or <i>bōbus</i>	<i>suibus, sūbus, or subus</i> <i>grus</i> , F., a crane <i>gruis</i>

NOTE.—The numbers in front of the Nom. Sing. of Nouns in the Declension indicate the number of the Nouns in the Latin Language similarly declined; as, <sup>2</sup> *sūs*, = *sūs* and *grus*.

### NOUNS, IRREGULAR

	First and Third Decl's. <i>a daughter</i> , F.	(i Noun) Second Decl. <i>a son</i> , M.	First and Third Decl's. <i>a goddess</i> , F.	Second Decl. <i>a god</i> , M.
<b>Sing.</b>				
<b>Nom.</b>	<i>filia</i>	<i>filius</i>	<i>dea</i>	<i>deus</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<i>filiae</i>	<i>filiī, fili</i>	<i>deae</i>	<i>dei</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>filiae</i>	<i>filiō</i>	<i>deae</i>	<i>deō</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>filiam</i>	<i>filium</i>	<i>deam</i>	<i>deum</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<i>filia</i>	<i>fili</i>	<i>dea</i>	<i>deus</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>filia</i>	<i>filiō</i>	<i>deā</i>	<i>deō</i>
<b>Plur.</b>				
<b>Nom.</b>	<i>filiae</i>	<i>filiī</i>	<i>deae</i>	<i>dei, diī, or dī</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<i>filiarum</i>	<i>filiōrum</i>	<i>dearum</i>	<i>deōrum, or deūm</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>filiaibus</i>	<i>filiis</i>	<i>deābus</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, or dis</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>filiās</i>	<i>filiōs</i>	<i>deās</i>	<i>deōs</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<i>filiae</i>	<i>filiī</i>	<i>deae</i>	<i>dei, diī, or dī</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>filiaibus</i>	<i>filiis</i>	<i>deābus</i>	<i>deīs, diīs, or dis</i>

### NOUN, PECULIAR

	(i stem)
<b>Sing.</b>	<i>strength, force</i> , F.
<b>Nom.</b>	<i>vis</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<i>vis</i> (rare)
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>vī</i> (rare)
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>vim</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	....
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>vī</i>
<b>Plur.</b>	<i>strength of body, power</i>
<b>Nom.</b>	<i>virēs</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<i>virium</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>viribus</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>virīs, ēs</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<i>virēs</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>viribus</i>

## ANALYSIS

**Analysis**, from two Greek words, ἀνά, *up*, λύσις, *loosening*, signifies *loosening up* or *tearing to pieces* the expressions we use.

There are four forms of language expression; viz.: The Word, the Phrase, the Clause, the Sentence.

**Sentences**, for the sake of Analysis, may be arranged in two classes; viz.:

Those having a Transitive Verb,

Those having an Intransitive Verb.

### Sentences with Transitive Verbs

These have a Subject, an Object, and a Verb Transitive.

**Equus faenum amat.** *The horse likes hay.*

#### A

1. Bōs vim habet.
2. Viri virēs habent.
3. Equi magnam vim in ōre habent.  
*the mouth*
4. Sūs magnam vim in nāsō habet.  
*(his) snout*
5. Bovēs magnās virēs in armīs habent.  
*shoulders*
6. Orātor miram vim in mente habet.  
*wonderful* *mind*
7. Filia bona sorōrēs benignās habet.
8. Filiū boni patrem justum habent.
9. Pulchra dea sacrum templum habuit.  
*had (sing.)*
10. Dī magni multa templa splendida Rōmae  
*at Rome*  
habuērunt.  
*had (plur.)*

### Sentences with Intransitive Verbs

These have a Subject, a Verb not Transitive, and usually a Predicate Noun or a Predicate Adjective.

**Equus est animal.** *The horse is an animal.*  
**Equus est fidus.** *The horse is faithful.*

#### B

1. Vis boum est magna.
2. Vis tempestātis est immēsa.  
*of the tempest*
3. Vis orātōris est mira.
4. Animī vigōre et corporis viribus (vir)  
excellēns (erat.)—Livy.  
*excelling* *was*
5. Nix nigra est.  
Sic Anaxagoras dixit.  
*thus Anaxagoras spoke*
6. Capitis nivēs sunt cānī capilli.  
*of the head* *gray hairs*  
Sic Horātius dixit.
7. Jūpiter filius Sātūrnī erat.  
*of Saturn*
8. Jūnō uxor Jovis erat.  
*Juno* *wife*
9. Jūpiter dominus caeli erat.  
*lord* *of heaven*
10. Jūpiter filiōs et filiās habuit.

## The Appositive

**An Appositive** is a Noun explaining a neighboring Noun or Pronoun, either before or after it.

**Rule.**—An Appositive takes the case and number of the Noun or Pronoun which it explains.

#### C

1. Jūpiter deus mirās virēs habuit.  
*wonderful*
2. Urbs Rōma arcem habuit.
3. Sicilia, insula, lātōs agrōs plānōs habuit.
4. Filius agricolae, bonus auriga, nigrōs equōs habet.
5. Filiae rēgīnae, puellae pulchrae, multōs servōs industriōs habent.

#### D

1. The father has a small son, a strong boy.
2. The mother has a little daughter, a beautiful girl.
3. The slaves have a splendid leader, a proud chief.
4. The master has strong slaves, good servants.
5. The maidens have beautiful flowers, both violets and roses.

**NOTE.**—Words not heretofore used may be found in the Word-list at the end of this book.

# 3

## NEUTER NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

### CLASS 1.—Nouns in *i*, Genitive *i-is*

(also *i stems*)

<b>Sing.</b>	an animal, N.	honey, N.	yellow ochre, N.
<b>Nom.</b>	animal	<sup>2</sup> mel	sil
<b>Gen.</b>	animālis	mellis	silis
<b>Dat.</b>	animāli	melli	sili
<b>Acc.</b>	animal	mel	sil
<b>Voc.</b>	animal	mel	sil
<b>Abl.</b>	animāli	melle	sile
<b>Plur.</b>			
<b>Nom.</b>	animālia	mella	
<b>Gen.</b>	animālium	....	
<b>Dat.</b>	animālibus	....	
<b>Acc.</b>	animālia	mella	
<b>Voc.</b>	animālia	....	
<b>Abl.</b>	animālibus	....	

vectigal, N. tax  
vectigālis  
<sup>1</sup> sāl, N. salt  
salis

fel, N. gall  
fellis (Plur.  
only, Nom.  
and Acc.)

nīl, N. nothing  
(for nihil,  
Nom. Sing.)

### CLASS 3.—Nouns in *n*, Genitive *n-is*

<b>Sing.</b>	a song, N.
<b>Nom.</b>	<sup>60</sup> carmen
<b>Gen.</b>	carminis
<b>Dat.</b>	carmini
<b>Acc.</b>	carmen
<b>Voc.</b>	carmen
<b>Abl.</b>	carmine
<b>Plur.</b>	
<b>Nom.</b>	carmina
<b>Gen.</b>	carminum
<b>Dat.</b>	carminibus
<b>Acc.</b>	carmina
<b>Voc.</b>	carmina
<b>Abl.</b>	carminibus

nōmen, N. a name  
nōminis  
agmen, N. an army on the march  
agminis  
fulmen, N. bolt lightning  
fulminis

### CLASS 4.—Nouns in *r*, Genitive *r-is*

(also *i stems*)

<b>Sing.</b>	a spur, N.	spell, N.	spring, N.	marble, N.	isory, N.	a humming, N.
<b>Nom.</b>	calcar	<sup>1</sup> far	<sup>1</sup> vēr	<sup>3</sup> marmor	<sup>4</sup> ebur	<sup>4</sup> murmur
<b>Gen.</b>	calcāris	farris	vēris	marmoris	eboris	murmuris
<b>Dat.</b>	calcāri	farri	vēri	marmorī	eborī	murmuri
<b>Acc.</b>	calcar	far	vēr	marmor	ebur	murmur
<b>Voc.</b>	calcar	far	vēr	marmor	ebur	murmur
<b>Abl.</b>	calcāri	farre	vēre, i	marmore, i	ebore	murmure
<b>Plur.</b>						
<b>Nom.</b>	calcāria	farra		marmora		murmura
<b>Gen.</b>	calcārium	....		marmorum		murmurum
<b>Dat.</b>	calcāribus	....		marmoribus		murmuribus
<b>Acc.</b>	calcāria	farra		marmora		murmura
<b>Voc.</b>	calcāria	....		marmora		murmura
<b>Abl.</b>	calcāribus	....		marmoribus		murmuribus

nectar, N. nectar  
nectaris (no Plur.)

cadāver, N. a corpse  
cadāveris  
<sup>1</sup> iter, N. a journey  
itineris

ador, N. spell (only Nom.  
and Acc. Sing.)  
aequor, N. the sea (still  
aequoris and smooth)

robur, N. oak  
roboris  
femur, N. the thigh  
femoris, feminis  
<sup>1</sup> jecur, N. the liver  
jecinoris, jecinoris,  
jecoris

fulgur, N. {sheet  
lightning  
fulguris  
sulfur, N. {sulphur,  
brimstone  
sulfuris  
guttur, N. the throat  
gutturis

**CLASS 4 (Continued).—Nouns in s. Genitive r-is and s-is**

	s. s-is. a vessel, N.	bronze = copper and tin, N.	s. s-is. a bone, N.	the mouth, N.	work, N.	a body, N.	the leg, N.
<b>Sing.</b>	<sup>2</sup> <i>vās</i>	<sup>1</sup> <i>aes</i>	<sup>1</sup> <i>os</i>	<sup>1</sup> <i>ōs</i>	<sup>20</sup> <i>opus</i>	<sup>14</sup> <i>corpus</i>	<sup>5</sup> <i>crūs</i>
<b>Nom.</b>	<i>vās</i>	<i>aes</i>	<i>os</i>	<i>ōs</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>crūs</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<i>vāsis</i>	<i>aeris</i>	<i>ossis</i>	<i>ōris</i>	<i>operis</i>	<i>corporis</i>	<i>crūris</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>vāsi</i>	<i>aerī</i>	<i>ossi</i>	<i>ōrī</i>	<i>operī</i>	<i>corpori</i>	<i>crūrī</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>vās</i>	<i>aes</i>	<i>os</i>	<i>ōs</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>crūs</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<i>vās</i>	<i>aes</i>	<i>os</i>	<i>ōs</i>	<i>opus</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>crūs</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>vāse</i>	<i>aere</i>	<i>osse</i>	<i>ōre</i>	<i>opere</i>	<i>corpore</i>	<i>crūre</i>
<b>Plur. 2d Decl.</b>							
<b>Nom.</b>	<i>vāsa</i>	<i>aera</i>	<i>ossa</i>	<i>ōra</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>corpora</i>	<i>crūra</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<i>vāsōrum</i>	<i>aerum</i> (rare)	<i>ossium</i>	....	<i>operum</i>	<i>corporum</i>	<i>crūrum</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>vāsis</i>	<i>aeribus</i> (rare)	<i>ossibus</i>	<i>ōribus</i> (rare)	<i>operibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>	<i>crūribus</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>vāsa</i>	<i>aera</i>	<i>ossa</i>	<i>ōra</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>corpora</i>	<i>crūra</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<i>vāsa</i>	<i>aera</i>	<i>ossa</i>	<i>ōra</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>corpora</i>	<i>crūra</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>vāsis</i>	<i>aeribus</i> (rare)	<i>ossibus</i>	<i>ōribus</i> (rare)	<i>operibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>	<i>crūribus</i>

*fās*, N. *divine law*  
(only Nom. and Acc. Sing.)

*pectus*, *pectoris*, N. *the breast*  
*pecus*, *pecoris*, N. *a herd of cattle*  
*tempus*, *temporis*, N. *time*

*jūs*, *jūris*, N. *human law*  
*rūs*, *rūris*, N. *the country*  
(Plur. only Nom. and Acc.)

**CLASS 7.—Nouns in r, a, c, t. Genitive d-is, and t-is**

		(Greek Nouns.)	
<b>Sing.</b>	<i>the heart</i> , N.	<i>a poem</i> , N.	<i>milk</i> , N.
<b>Nom.</b>	<i>cor</i>	<i>poēma</i>	<i>lac</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<i>cordis</i>	<i>poēmatis</i>	<i>lactis</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>cordi</i>	<i>poēmati</i>	<i>lactī</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>cor</i>	<i>poēma</i>	<i>lac</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<i>cor</i>	<i>poēma</i>	<i>lac</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>corde</i>	<i>poēmate</i>	<i>lacte</i> , i
<b>Plur.</b>			
<b>Nom.</b>	<i>corda</i>	<i>poēmata</i>	<i>capita</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	....	<i>poēmatum</i> , <i>ōrum</i>	<i>capitum</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>cordibus</i>	<i>poēmatibus</i> , <i>is</i>	<i>capitibus</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>corda</i>	<i>poēmata</i>	<i>capita</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<i>corda</i>	<i>poēmata</i>	<i>capita</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>cordibus</i>	<i>poēmatibus</i> , <i>is</i>	<i>capitibus</i>

**CLASS 9.—Nouns in e**

(Polysyllables not increasing)

		Gen. Plur. i-um
<b>Sing.</b>	<i>a seal</i> , N.	<i>the sea</i> , N.
<b>Nom.</b>	<i>sedīle</i>	<i>mare</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<i>sedīlis</i>	<i>maris</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>sedīli</i>	<i>mari</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>sedīle</i>	<i>mare</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<i>sedīle</i>	<i>mare</i>
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>sedīli</i>	<i>mari</i>
<b>Plur.</b>		
<b>Nom.</b>	<i>sedīlia</i>	<i>maria</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	<i>sedīlium</i>	<i>marium</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	<i>sedīlibus</i>	....
<b>Acc.</b>	<i>sedīlia</i>	<i>maria</i>
<b>Voc.</b>	<i>sedīlia</i>	....
<b>Abl.</b>	<i>sedīlibus</i>	<i>maribus</i> (rare)

*rēte*, N. *a net*  
*rētis*

## VOCABULARY—THE HUMAN BODY

<b>corpus, oris, N.</b> <i>a body</i>	<b>crūs, crūris, N.</b> <i>a leg</i>
<b>dēns, tis, M.</b> <i>a tooth</i>	<b>genu, ūs, N.</b> (4th Decl.), <i>the knee</i>
<b>membrum, i, N.</b> <i>a limb</i>	<b>pēs, pedis, M.</b> <i>the foot</i>
<b>bracchium, ii, N.</b> <i>the arm</i>	<b>calx, calcis, F.</b> <i>the heel</i>
<b>cubitum, i, N.</b> <i>the elbow</i>	<b>collum, i, N.</b> <i>the neck</i>
<b>manus, ūs, F.</b> (4th Decl.), <i>the hand</i>	<b>jugulum, i, N.</b> <i>the collar-bone</i>
<b>digitus, i, M.</b> <i>a finger</i>	<b>pectus, oris, N.</b> <i>the breast</i>
<b>dextra, ae, F.</b> <i>the right hand</i>	<b>vōx, vōcis, F.</b> <i>the voice</i>
<b>sinistra, ae, F.</b> <i>the left hand</i>	<b>spīritus, ūs, M.</b> (4th Decl.), <i>the breath</i>
<b>palma, ae, F.</b> <i>the palm</i>	<b>tergum, i, N.</b> <i>the back</i>
<b>index, icis, M.</b> <i>the forefinger</i>	<b>spīna, ae, F.</b> <i>the backbone</i>
<b>artūs, uum, M.</b> (4th Decl.), <i>the joints</i>	<b>costa, ae, F.</b> <i>a rib</i>

NOTE.—The Romans went with their heads bare, merely raising up a fold of the toga when the sun was too hot or the wind very high. At sacred rites or when in peril of life they also covered their heads in this way.

Anciently they were bearded, like other rude nations; but later barbers were imported from Sicily, and the custom of shaving grew common. Most statues of men in our galleries, dating round the Christian era, are beardless. Fashion was wont to follow the Emperor, the citizens wearing beards when he set the example. Boys wore their tresses long and flowing, or drawn back out of the way; but every youth on the day he came of age shaved his beard and cut his hair; the day being observed as a festival, when friends brought gifts and congratulations. Slaves while in bondage never shaved or cut the hair; on being set free, they did both immediately. In case of a vow, such as St. Paul made, or when mourning, the Romans went unshaven and unshorn. To use a mirror, when shaving, was thought a great effeminacy; but citizens of wealth had their own *tōnsor* in their *familia*; others resorted to the *tōnstrīna*, a grand place to gossip and to get the latest news.

Cicero tells us that the eye and the brow are a mirror for the feelings; and Horace says the low forehead is a mark of greatest beauty in a maiden.

The Romans did not shake hands upon meeting as we do. *Salvē!* *Good day!* on meeting, and *Valē!* *Farewell!* on parting, were the usual salutations. To salute upon the street they raised the hand, pointing at each other.

NOTE.—Nearly half the words of the English Language have come straight from the Latin Language. A good knowledge of Latin therefore assists greatly in the spelling, definition, and derivation of present-day English. We find many unique and interesting Etymologies. Some English words come directly from the old Latin Nominative case, but usually they are built upon the Genitive stem.



## ENGLISH—ETYMOLOGY

**corps**, an organized *body* of men

**corpulent**, over-fleshy in *body*

**corpuscle**, an atom of the *body*

**incorporate** { to authorize by law a *body* of  
men to act as a single person

**corporation** { a *body* of men *incorporated* to  
act as a unit

**corselet**, a light armor-plate for the *body*

**member**, an individual of a society

**bracelet**, an ornament for the *arm*

**cubit** { a measure, from the point of the *elbow*  
to the end of the middle finger

**manage**, to *handle*

**manual**, a *handy* volume

**manner** (orig.), a method of *handling*

**manure** (orig.), to till with the *hand*

**dexterous**, ready with the *right hand*

**ambidextrous**, using *both* hands as *right hands*

**sinister**, coming on the *left*, unlucky

**palm**, a tree with *palm-shaped* leaves

**index**, a pointer

**genuflexions**, *knee-bendings*

**pedal**, a *foot* lever

**pedestal**, the *foot* of a statue

**pedestrian**, a *foot-traveler*

**pedometer**, a *foot-step measurer*

**pedigree**, a family-tree resembling a *crane's foot*

**collar**, a *neck* band

**jugular**, a large vein under the *collar-bone*

**pectoral**, medicine for the *chest*

**vocal**, belonging to the *voice*

**vocative**, the Case of Address

**vocabulary**, a list of words

**sprite**, a ghost invisible as the *breath*

**spine** { the *backbone*, from its *thorn-like* pro-  
cesses

**spineless**, 1. without *backbone*. 2. lacking  
courage

**spinal**, pertaining to the *backbone*

**intercostal**, lying *between* the *ribs*

**dent**, a *tooth-mark*, a notch at the edge

**dental**, pertaining to the *teeth*

**dentate**, notched, as bitten out by the *teeth*

**dentiform**, *tooth-shaped*

**dentifrice**, a *tooth-powder*, -paste, -wash

**dentine**, the bone tissue of the *teeth*

**dentist**, a surgeon for the *teeth*

**dentistry**, *tooth surgery*

**dentiphone**, an instrument to hear thro' the *teeth*

**dentition**, cutting the *teeth*, *teething*

**indent**, to notch the edge, as bitten *into* by the  
*teeth*

**indenture** { (orig.), two papers cut apart with a  
notched, zigzag line; a contract

**trident**, a *three-pronged* spear

**edentata** { animals *without teeth* in front, as the  
sloth and ant-eater

## VOCABULARY—HEAD AND ORGANS

**caput, itis**, N. *the head*  
**capillus, i**, M. *the hair*  
**barba, æ**, F. *the beard*  
**frōns, tis**, F. *the forehead*  
**faciēs, ēi**, F. (5th Decl.), *the face*  
**ōs, ōris**, N. *the mouth*  
**os, ossis**, N. *a bone*  
**dēns, tis**, M. *a tooth*  
**lingua, æ**, F. *the tongue*  
**labrum, i**, N. } *a lip*  
**labium, ii**, N. }  
**auris, is**, F. *an ear*  
**oculus, i**, M. *an eye*

**nāsus, i**, M. *the nose*  
**palātum, i**, N. *the palate*  
**nervus, i**, M. *a sinew, a muscle*  
**cutis, is**, F. *the skin*  
**lacrima, æ**, F. *a tear*  
**saliva, æ**, F. *saliva*  
**vēna, æ**, F. *a vein*  
**sanguis, inis**, M. *blood*  
**cor, cordis**, N. *the heart*  
**pulmō, ōnis**, M. *a lung*  
**jecur, jecoris**, etc. N. *the liver*  
**cerebrum, i**, N. *the brain*  
**sūdor, ōris**, M. *sweat, perspiration*

## ENGLISH—ETYMOLOGY

**cap**, a cover for the *head*  
**fool's-cap** { (orig.) writing-paper having a fool's  
                   *cap* and bells as a water-mark  
**cape**, a *headland*  
**captain**, the *head* man of a company  
**capital**, the city at the *head* of the state  
**capitol**, a building at the *head* of others  
**capillaries** { blood-vessels resembling *hairs* con-  
                   necting arteries and veins  
**barber**, one who shaves the *beard*; a hair-dresser  
**Barbadoes** { a name from the *beard*-like air-  
                   plants growing on the trees  
**front**, the face of anything  
**frontier**, the border *fronting* or facing the wild  
**frontis-piece**, the picture *fronting* the title-page  
**façade** { the *front* view, the elevation of a  
                   building  
**oral**, spoken by the *mouth*  
**ossification**, change into *bony* substance  
**osprey**, a fish-hawk  
**linguist**, one skilled in *languages*

**lingo**, country-talk, dialect  
**language**, human speech, *tongue*  
**labial**, pronounced by the *lips*  
**auricle** { the external *ear*,  
                   a chamber of the heart  
**oculist**, an *eye*-doctor  
**nasal**, sounded through the *nose*  
**Nasturtium** { a pungent flower that *twists* the  
                   *nose*  
**palatable**, pleasing to the *palate*  
**nerve**, a telegraph wire to the brain  
**nervous** { 1, full of *nerve*  
                   2, having weak *nerves*  
**cuticle**, the very thin outer *skin* of man  
**sanguinary**, *bloody*, *bloodthirsty*  
**sanguine**, full of red *blood*, full of hope  
**cordial**, *hearty*, warm-hearted  
**pulmonary**, pertaining to the *lungs*  
**pulmotor** { an instrument for reviving action  
                   in the *lungs*  
**cerebration**, action of the *brain*  
**sudorific**, medicine causing *sweat*

# SENTENCES—HEAD AND ORGANS

## A

1. Caput Jovi sacrum erat.  
was
2. Capillus capitis est pulcher.
3. Virginēs tondēbant barbā et capillum  
were trimming  
patris.—*Cic.*
4. Prima barba sacra aut Apollini, aut Jovi,  
to Apollo  
aut Veneri erat.  
to Venus
5. Simulācra deōrum barbās aureās habu-  
images golden  
ērunt.—*Cic.*
6. Pānem frontis sūdōre editō.  
(thy) bread thou shalt eat
7. Consul frontem contrahit.  
knits
8. Siccat frontem sūdāriō candidō.—*Quin.*  
he dries with a kerchief
9. Virgō pulchra parvā frontem habet.
10. Capri frōns erat turgida cornibus.  
swollen with horns
11. Dentēs sunt ossa omnium durissima in  
of all hardest  
ōre animālium.—*Cic.*
12. Longam faciem equus habet.
13. Flūmen, per ōra novem, mare petit.  
thro' nine seeks
14. Animālia nec ossa solum, sed etiam san-  
not only but also  
guinem habent.
15. Dēns Indus erat Rōmānum nōmen eboris,  
etiam dēns Libycus.  
also
16. Oculum prō oculō, dentem prō dente,  
for  
manum prō manū, pedem prō pede.—*Ex.*
17. Jecur in dextrā parte est.—*Or.*  
side
18. Aesculāpius prīmus dentis ēvulsīōnem  
the extraction  
invēnit.—*Plaut.*  
invented
19. Cerebrum, cor, pulmōnēs, jecur: haec enim  
these  
sunt domicilia vitāe.—*Cic.*  
(dwelling-places)

## B

1. Rōmāni falsōs dentēs eboris fēcērunt.  
made
2. Dentēs aurō refēcērunt.  
they repaired
3. In ōre sita lingua est.—*Cic.*  
situated
4. Puer linguam tenet, sed lacrimās nōn tenet.  
holds but
5. Id (est) prōmontōrium, cūjus lingua in  
that of which  
altum prōjicit.—*Pac.*  
projects
6. Rōmāni per oculōs jūrāvērunt.  
by swore (= took oath)
7. Athēnae et Sparta duo oculi Graeciae  
erant.  
were
8. Sōl est mundi oculus.—†*Or.*
9. Cōsul ante oculōs est multitudinis.  
of the multitude
10. Anguis cutem relinquit.  
leaves
11. Vectigālia sunt nervi reipūblīcae.
12. Pŷthagoras, sculptor in Magnā Graeciā,  
prīmus et nervōs et vēnās et capillōs in  
marmore expressit.  
portrayed
13. Nervi bellī pecūnia sunt.—*Cic.*  
money
14. Absterget Deus omnem lacrimam ab  
wipes away every  
oculis.—*Vulg.*
15. Medicus vēnam tangit.—*Pers.*  
the doctor touches (= feels)
16. Medicus sanguinem mittit.  
lets
17. Animal sanguinem habet, etiam cor habet.  
also it has
18. Tōtum sūdor habet corpus.—*Enn.*  
whole
19. Gelidus tōtō mānābat corpore sūdor.—*Verg.*  
whole was trickling

## ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION

## Of Three Terminations

**(Very few in number)**

**ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp** (as an edge)

<b>Sing.</b>	<b>M.</b>	<b>F.</b>	<b>N.</b>
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<b>Plur.</b>			
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācris, ōs	ācris, ōs	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

**ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp** (by nature), *keen*, { *shrewd*  
*eager*

**acūtus, a, um, sharpened** (by man), *pointed*

**alacer, alacris, alacre, lively, quick**

**celeber, bris, bre,** 1. *much frequented*; 2. *famous*

▲

1. *Oculus aurigae est ācer.*
2. *Auris animālis est ācris.*
3. *Equus ducis est celer.*
4. *Urbs Rōma est celebris.*
5. *Nauta Athēnārum erat alacer.*
6. *Auriga oculum ācrem habet.*
7. *Animal aurem ācrem habet.*
8. *Puer ācrem vōcem habet.*
9. *Mūs ācrem dentem habet.*
10. *Sūs dentem ācrem habet.*

NOTE.—*âcer, âcris, âcre* was shortened by usage from *âcer, âceris, âcere*.

## TABLE OF TERMINATIONS

S.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ā'cer	ā'cris	ā'cre
G.	ācris	is	is
D.	ī	ī	ī
Ac.	em	em	e
V.	ācer	is	e
Ab.	acri	ī	ī

Pl.			
N.	ēs	ēs	ia
G.	ium	ium	ium
D.	ibus	ibus	ibus
Ac.	īs, ēs	īs, ēs	ia
V.	ēs	ēs	ia
Ab.	ibus	ibus	ibus

**salūber, bris, bre, *healthful***

**silvester, tris, tre, woody**

**volucer, cris, cre, winged**

**celer, oris, ere, swift, fleet, (no Gen. Plur.)**

**B**

1. Oculi aurigārum sunt ācrēs.
2. Aurēs animālium sunt ācrēs.
3. Equi ducum sunt alacrēs.
4. Nūbēs noctis sunt volucrēs.
5. Templā Jovis erant celebriā.
6. Aurigae oculōs ācrēs habent.
7. Animālia aurēs ācrēs habent.
8. Puerī ācrēs vōcēs habent.
9. Mūrēs ācrēs dentēs habent.
10. Suēs dentēs ācrēs habent.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

## Of Two Terminations

(Very numerous)

<i>tristis, triste, sad</i>			<i>tristior, tristius, sadder</i>		<sup>1</sup> <i>plūs, more</i>	
Sing.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>tristis</i>	<i>triste</i>	<i>tristior</i>	<i>tristius</i>	....	<i>plūs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>tristis</i>	<i>tristis</i>	<i>tristiōris</i>	<i>tristiōris</i>	....	<i>plūris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tristī</i>	<i>tristī</i>	<i>tristiōri</i>	<i>tristiōri</i>	....	....
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>tristem</i>	<i>triste</i>	<i>tristiōrem</i>	<i>tristius</i>	....	<i>plūs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>tristis</i>	<i>triste</i>	<i>tristior</i>	<i>tristius</i>	....	....
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tristī</i>	<i>tristī</i>	<i>tristiōre</i>	<i>tristiōre</i>	....	<i>plūre</i> (rare)
<b>Plur.</b>						
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>tristēs</i>	<i>tristia</i>	<i>tristiōrēs</i>	<i>tristiōra</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>tristium</i>	<i>tristium</i>	<i>tristiōrum</i>	<i>tristiōrum</i>	<i>plūrium</i>	<i>plūrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tristibus</i>	<i>tristibus</i>	<i>tristiōribus</i>	<i>tristiōribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>tristis,ēs</i>	<i>tristia</i>	<i>tristiōrēs</i>	<i>tristiōra</i>	<i>plūrēs,is</i>	<i>plūra</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>tristēs</i>	<i>tristia</i>	<i>tristiōrēs</i>	<i>tristiōra</i>	....	....
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tristibus</i>	<i>tristibus</i>	<i>tristiōribus</i>	<i>tristiōribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>

*tristis, triste, sad, saddening**brevis, breve, short**fortis, forte, 1. strong, 2. brave**gravis, grave, heavy**grandis, grande, large**mollis, molle, supple, soft, gentle**amābilis, amābile, lovely**facilis, facile, easy**humilis, humile, low, lowly, humble**pinguis, pingue, fat**tristior, tristius, sadder**brevior, brevius, shorter**fortior, fortius, 1. stronger, 2. braver**gravior, gravius, heavier**grandior, grandius, larger**mollior, mollius, softer**amābilior, amābilius, lovelier**facilior, facilius, easier**humilior, humilius, humbler**pinguior, pinguius, fatter*

## A

1. Frāter est tristis.
2. Equus est fortis.
3. Lapis est gravis.
4. Nōmen est amābile.
5. Rosa est amābilis.
6. Sūs est pinguis.
7. Rēgina est amābilis.
8. Carmen est breve.
9. Servus est humilis.
10. Vōx poētae est mollis.

## B

1. Sorōrēs sunt tristiōrēs.
2. Bovēs sunt fortiōrēs.
3. Saxa sunt graviōra.
4. Carmina sunt amābiliōra.
5. Violae sunt amābiliōrēs.
6. Bovēs sunt pinguiōrēs.
7. Virginēs sunt amābiliōrēs.
8. Poēmata sunt breviōra.
9. Bōs est humilior.
10. Vōcēs virginum sunt molliōrēs.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

## Of One Termination

	<i>fēlix, favorable</i>		<i>prūdēns, prudent</i>		<i>amāns, loving</i>	
Sing.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	<i>fēlix</i>		<i>prūdēns</i>		<i>amāns</i>	
Gen.	<i>fēlicis</i>		<i>prudentis</i>		<i>amantis</i>	
Dat.	<i>fēlici</i>		<i>prudenti</i>		<i>amanti</i>	
Acc.	<i>fēlicem</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>prudentem</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>amantem</i>	<i>amāns</i>
Voc.	<i>fēlix</i>		<i>prūdēns</i>		<i>amāns</i>	
Abl.	<i>fēlici</i>		<i>prudenti</i>		<i>amante, -ī *</i>	
Plur.						
Nom.	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentia</i>	<i>amantēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>
Gen.	<i>fēlicium</i>		<i>prudentium</i>		<i>amantium</i>	
Dat.	<i>fēlicibus</i>		<i>prudentibus</i>		<i>amantibus</i>	
Acc.	<i>fēlicis,ēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>prudentis,ēs</i>	<i>prudentia</i>	<i>amantis,ēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>
Voc.	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentia</i>	<i>amantēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>
Abl.	<i>fēlicibus</i>		<i>prudentibus</i>		<i>amantibus</i>	

\* Mostly *ī* as an adjective, *e* as a participle.

*fēlix, icis, favorable, lucky, happy*  
*ferax, ācis, fertile, fruitful*  
*ferox, ōcis, fierce*  
*audax, ācis, bold, daring*  
*atrox, ōcis, horrible*  
*duplex, icis, double*  
*simplex, icis, simple, artless*  
*sagax, ācis, shrewd, sagacious*  
*tenax, ācis, tough, tenacious*  
*vēlox, ōcis, swift, speedy*

*prūdēns, tis, prudent*  
*patēns, tis, open*  
*potēns, tis, powerful*  
*praesēns, tis, present*  
*amāns, tis, loving*  
*diligēns, tis, careful, diligent*  
*ēlegāns, tis, choice, tasteful, tasty*  
*recēns, tis, fresh, recent*  
*sapiēns, tis, wise*  
*silēns, tis, still, silent*

## Phrases

To write in Latin and to parse

## A

1. Of a fertile field.
2. Of a prudent consul.
3. Of a powerful city.
4. Of a present genius.
5. Of a favorable winter.
6. Of diligent daughters.
7. Of powerful enemies.
8. Of fruitful islands.
9. Of fierce animals.
10. Of sagacious sons.

## B

1. To a loving daughter.
2. To a daring enemy.
3. To a simple sailor.
4. For a careful farmer.
5. For a prudent master.
6. For powerful leaders.
7. For the quiet mice.
8. For lions bold.
9. For sagacious men.
10. For horses swift.

# PARSING BY DIAGRAM AND ORALLY

	Subj. N. M. 1	Obj. N. M. 2	Qual. * Adj. 3, 3	Adj. Ac. P. M.	Vb. 3. P.
1.	<b>Aurigae</b>	<b>gladiōs</b>	<b>ācrēs</b>	<b>habent</b>	
	<i>Charioteers</i>	<i>swords</i>	<i>sharp</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>they†</i>

	S. N. F. 3	V.S. Vb. 3. P.	Pred. * Adj. 3, 2	Adj. Comp. †	N. P. F.
2.	<b>Sorōrēs</b>	<b>sunt</b>	<b>tristiōr</b>	<b>ēs</b>	
	<i>The sister</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>sad</i>	<i>(d)er</i>	
		<i>they†</i>	<i>more</i>	<i>rather</i>	

N. F. 1	N. S.	Adj. 1-2	Sup. †	N. S. F.				
3. Fēmina	a	prudentissim	a		4. In	favorable		a winter
A woman		prudent	est		In	fēlic		hieme
		most	very		Prep.	* Adj. 3, 1	Ab. S. F.	N. F. 3
					(gov. Abl.)			Ab. S.

## ORAL EXPLANATION OF PARSING. SENTENCE NO. 1

**Aurigae**, comes from **auriga, ae** It is a N. M. 1st found here in N. P. Subj. of Vb. **habent.**  
(Rule.)

**Gladiōs**, comes from **gladius, ii** It is a N. M. 2d found here in Ac. P. Obj. of Vb. **habent.**  
(Rule.)

**ācrēs**, comes from **ācer, ācris, ācre** It is an Adj. 3, 3 found here in Ac. P. M. to agree with Noun **gladiōs.**  
(Rule.)

\* Adj. 3, 3 = Adjective of 3d Decl., of 3 terminations.

Adj. 3, 2 = Adjective of 3d Decl., of 2 terminations.

Adj. 3, 1 = Adjective of 3d Decl., of 1 termination.

† The Verb, in a Latin sentence, really had two Subjects, one usually expressed, the other embodied in the ending of the Verb itself. The student should cancel the latter in his English translation.

‡ Comp. = Comparative Degree.

Sup. = Superlative Degree.

# 4

## FOURTH DECLENSION

### The u Nouns (ŭ Stems)

**Endings and Gender.** { The Genitive Singular of Nouns of the Fourth ends in ŭs.  
 { The Nominative Singular ends in { **us**, Masculine and Feminine.  
 { **ū**, Neuter.

<b>Sing.</b>	<i>a step, M.</i>	<i>a bow, M.</i>	<i>a harbor, M.</i>	<i>a horn, N.</i>
<b>Nom.</b>	<b>gradus</b>	<sup>4</sup> <b>arcus</b>	<sup>4</sup> <b>portus</b>	<sup>3</sup> <b>cornū</b>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>gradūs</b>	<b>arcūs</b>	<b>portūs</b>	<b>cornūs</b>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>graduī</b>	<b>arcuī</b>	<b>portui</b>	<b>cornū</b>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>gradum</b>	<b>arcum</b>	<b>portum</b>	<b>cornū</b>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>gradus</b>	<b>arcus</b>	<b>portus</b>	<b>cornū</b>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>gradū</b>	<b>arcū</b>	<b>portū</b>	<b>cornū</b>
<b>Plur.</b>				
<b>Nom.</b>	<b>gradūs</b>	<b>arcūs</b>	<b>portūs</b>	<b>cornua</b>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>graduum</b>	<b>arcuum</b>	<b>portuum</b>	<b>cornuum</b>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>gradibus</b>	<b>arcubus</b>	<b>portubus, ibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>gradūs</b>	<b>arcūs</b>	<b>portūs</b>	<b>cornua</b>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>gradūs</b>	<b>arcūs</b>	<b>portūs</b>	<b>cornua</b>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>gradibus</b>	<b>arcubus</b>	<b>portubus, ibus</b>	<b>cornibus</b>
	<b>manus, ūs, F. the hand</b> <b>porticus, ūs, F. a porch</b> <b>fructus, ūs, M. fruit</b>	<b>acus, ūs, F. a needle</b> <b>tribus, ūs, F. a tribe</b> <b>partus, ūs, M. birth</b>	<b>artūs, uum, M. joints</b> <b>lacus, ūs, M. a lake</b> <b>specus, ūs, M. a cave</b>	<b>genū, ūs, N. the knee</b> <b>genubus, genibus, (in</b> Dat. and Abl. Plur.) <b>verū, ūs, N. a spit</b> <b>verubus, veribus, (in</b> Dat. and Abl. Plur.)

### NOUN OF THE FOURTH AND SECOND

<b>Sing.</b>	
<b>Nom.</b>	<b>domus, a house, home, F.</b>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>domūs, domī (rare)</b>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>domui, domō</b>
<i>Locative case: domi—at home, in the house *</i>	
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>domum, home, homewards, to the house</b>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>domus</b>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>domō, domū, from home, out of the house</b>

<b>Plur.</b>	
<b>Nom.</b>	<b>domūs</b>
<b>Gen.</b>	<b>domuum, domōrum (late)</b>
<b>Dat.</b>	<b>domibus</b>
<b>Acc.</b>	<b>domōs</b> { <i>to homes</i> <i>homeward</i> <b>domūs, the houses</b>
<b>Voc.</b>	<b>domūs</b>
<b>Abl.</b>	<b>domibus</b>

### Tables of Terminations

<b>gradus, a step</b>	<b>cornū, a horn</b>
<b>ūs, of a</b>	<b>ūs, of a</b>
<b>ui, to, for</b>	<b>ū, to, for</b>
<b>um, a step</b>	<b>ū, a horn</b>
<b>us, O</b>	<b>ū, O</b>
<b>ū, by, with, from</b>	<b>ū, by, with, from</b>
<b>ūs, steps</b>	<b>ua, horns</b>
<b>uum, of</b>	<b>uum, of</b>
<b>ibus, to, for</b>	<b>ibus, to, for</b>
<b>ūs, steps</b>	<b>ua, horns</b>
<b>ūs, O</b>	<b>ua, O</b>
<b>ibus, by, with, from</b>	<b>ibus, by, with, from</b>

\* An old case, signifying place, not used in the time of Cicero.



## VOCABULARY—SENSES AND MOTIONS

**intellectus, ūs, M.** { *perception* through the senses  
                                  *intellect*

**sēnsus, ūs, M.** *a sense*

**visus, ūs, M.** *seeing, the sense of sight*

**auditus, ūs, M.** *hearing, the sense of hearing*

**odōrātus, ūs, M.** *smelling, the sense of smell, odor*

**gustātus, ūs, M.** *tasting, the sense of taste, flavor*

**tactus, ūs, M.** *touching, the sense of touch*

**Verbs** { 3d Pers. Sing. **erat, was**  
              3d Pers. Plur. **erant, were**

**mōtus, ūs, M.** *a motion*

**gressus, ūs, M.** *a going.* (e-, in-, con-.)

**gradus, ūs, M.** *a step*

**passus, ūs, M.** *a pace* (= five Roman feet)

**cursus, ūs, M.** *a running, a course*

**saltus, ūs, M.** *a leaping, a leap*

**currus, ūs, M.** *a chariot*

**cāsus, ūs, M.** *a falling, an event*

**lapsus, ūs, M.** *a sliding, a slip*

**flexus, ūs, M.** *a bending, a winding*

**versus, ūs, M.** { *a line* of writing  
                          *a verse* of poetry  
(a turning of the plow at the end of the furrow)

### A

1. Mōtūs corporis grātī sunt puerīs.
2. Gradūs puellārum brevēs erant.
3. Leō asper tactū est.—*Hor.*
4. Mel gustātui leōnis grātum est.
5. Flōrum odōrātus rēginae grātus est.
6. Lapsus linguae est facilis.
7. Cāsus nivis silēns et celer erat.
8. Porticūs Athēnārum jūcundae erant.
9. Tactus sōlis et lūnae est grātus. †—*Cic.*
10. Domūs Rōmae grandēs erant.  
(at Rome. Locative Case.)
11. Omne animal sēnsūs habet.—*Cic.*
12. Tactus corporis est sēnsus.—*Lucr.*

### C

1. Seeing is easy for animals.
2. Hearing is easy for horses.
3. Smelling is easy for lions.
4. The taste of the fruit was wretched.
5. The sense of touch is keen.

† Adapted.

### B

1. Gradūs militum erant longī.
2. Arcūs hostium erant validi.
3. Acūs fēminae erant acūtāe.
4. Portūs Graeciae erant boni.
5. Artūs corporis sunt potentēs.
6. Lacūs Italiae sunt altī.
7. Specūs insulae erant ātri.
8. Manūs virginis erant tenerae.
9. Cursus currūs erat pulcher.
10. Faenum habet in cornū, longē fuge.—*Hor.*  
  *far    flee*
11. Habeō opus magnum in manibus.—*Cic.*  
  *I have*
12. Versūs poētae erant atrōcēs.

### D

1. The house of the consul was elegant.
2. The motion of the clouds is swift.
3. The verses of the poet were beautiful.
4. The horns of the ox are hard.
5. The knees of horses are strong.

## FIFTH DECLENSION

The e Nouns (ē stems)

**Endings** { The Genitive Singular of Nouns of the Fifth ends in *eī*, or *ēī*.  
The Nominative Singular ends in *ēs* or *iēs*.

**Gender.** They are all Feminine but one.

(Compound of <i>diēs</i> )			Tables of Terminations		
Sing.	a thing, F.	a day, M. or F.	mid-day, M.	S.	
Nom.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>meridiēs</i>	N.	<i>rēs</i> <i>di ēs</i>
Gen.	<i>reī</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>meridiēī</i>	G.	<i>eī</i> <i>ēī</i>
Dat.	<i>reī</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>meridiēī</i>	D.	<i>eī</i> <i>ēī</i>
Acc.	<i>rem</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>meridiem</i>	Ac.	<i>em</i> <i>em</i>
Voc.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>meridiēs</i>	V.	<i>ēs</i> <i>ēs</i>
Abl.	<i>rē</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>meridiē</i>	Ab.	<i>ē</i> <i>ē</i>
				Pl.	
Nom.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i> , days, M. only		N.	<i>ēs</i> <i>ēs</i>
Gen.	<i>rērum</i>	<i>diōrum</i>		G.	<i>ērum</i> <i>ērum</i>
Dat.	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>diēbus</i>		D.	<i>ēbus</i> <i>ēbus</i>
Acc.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>		Ac.	<i>ēs</i> <i>ēs</i>
Voc.	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>		V.	<i>ēs</i> <i>ēs</i>
Abl.	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>diēbus</i>		Ab.	<i>ēbus</i> <i>ēbus</i>

*spēs*, *eī*, F. *hope*.

*fidēs*, *eī*, F. *faith*.

*plēbēs*, *eī*, F. *The*

All Nouns of the Fifth

end in *iēs*, like *diēs*,

except *rēs*, *spēs*, *fidēs*, *plēbēs*

*Commons.*

NOTE 1.—The Stem Letter *e* in the Gen. and Dat. Sing. is { long after a vowel, as in *di ēī*.  
short after a consonant, as in *r ēī*.

NOTE 2.—Nouns of the 5th Declension, excepting *rēs* and *diēs*, are *wanting* in most of the plural cases. Only eight or nine have some plural cases. Many are *wanting* in some of their singular cases also.

## NOUN FIRST OR FIFTH

Sing.	material, F.	
Nom.	<i>māteria</i>	<i>māteriēs</i>
Gen.	<i>māteriae</i>	<i>māteriēī</i>
Dat.	<i>māteriae</i>	<i>māteriēī</i>
Acc.	<i>māteriam</i>	<i>māteriem</i>
Voc.	<i>māteria</i>	<i>māteriēs</i>
Abl.	<i>māteriā</i>	<i>māteriē</i>

Plur.	
Nom.	<i>māteriae</i>
Gen.	<i>māteriārum</i>
Dat.	<i>māteriis</i>
Acc.	<i>māteriās</i>
Voc.	<i>māteriae</i>
Abl.	<i>māteriis</i>

## NOUN FIRST AND FIFTH

*The Commonwealth, F.*

<i>Rēspūblica</i>
<i>Reipūblicae</i>
<i>Reipūblicae</i>
<i>Rempūblicam</i>
<i>Rēspūblica</i>
<i>Rēpūblicā</i>

<i>Rēspūblicae</i>	} <i>public affairs</i>
<i>Rērumpūblicārum</i>	
<i>Rēbuspūblicis</i>	
<i>Rēspūblicās</i>	
<i>Rēspūblicae</i>	
<i>Rēbuspūblicis</i>	

## NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION

(Only about 100 in number)

**rēs, rei**, F. *a thing, affair, property*

**spēs, ei**, F. *hope*

**fidēs, ei**, F. *faith, belief*

**plēbēs, ei**, F. *the Common People*

**aciēs, ei**, F. *battle-line*

**faciēs, ei**, F. *the face*

**glaciēs, ei**, F. *ice*

**speciēs, ei**, F. *appearance*

**seriēs, ei**, F. *a row, a series*

**rabiēs, ei**, F. *rage, madness*

**diēs, ei**, M. or F. *day*

**meridiēs, ei**, M. *noon*

**maciēs, ei**, F. *leanness*

**māteriēs, ei**, F. *stuff, stone and timber*

**luxuriēs, ei**, F. *extravagance*

**perniciēs, ei**, F. *destruction*

**plānitiēs, ei**, F. *a plain*

**prōgeniēs, ei**, F. *lineage*

**effigiēs, ei**, F. *a likeness*

**superficiēs, ei**, F. *the surface*

### A

1. Rēs bona. Rēs bonae.
2. Rēs magna. Rēs magnae.
3. Rēs pulchra. Rēs novae.
4. Rēs prosperae. Rēs adversae.
5. Spēs fēminae erant bonae.
6. Spēs Reipūblicae pax erat.
7. Fidēs plēbei simplex et pulchra erat.
8. Rabiēs leōnis longa et atrox erat.
9. Rabiēs plēbei ferox et brevis erat.
10. Longam faciem habet ovis similem.

### C

1. It is a good thing. It is a bad thing.
2. The boy has a good face.
3. The faith of the father was beautiful.
4. The hopes of the mother were great.
5. The appearance of the clouds is favorable.

### B

1. Faciēs fēminae erat pulchra.
2. Sōl glaciem dissolvit.  
*mellis*
3. Jūcundī sunt diēs et noctēs.
4. Māteriēs templī erat antiqua.
5. Luxuriēs rēgīnae erat injusta.
6. Perniciēs Athēnārūm tristis erat.
7. Plānitiēs urbis erat plāna.
8. Poētae effigiēs est bona.
9. Maciēs bovis erat tristis.
10. Tenerās glaciēs secat aspera violās.  
*cuta*

### D

1. The day is short, the night is long.
2. The appearance of the city was beautiful.
3. The days and nights were still.
4. The surface of the sea was still.
5. The surface of the land is rough.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

An Adjective is a word used to qualify or describe a Noun; as **vir validus**, a *strong man*.  
Most Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative Degrees.

### The Double s Superlatives

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
<b>altus</b> , <i>high</i>	<b>altior</b> , <i>higher</i> <i>more high</i> <i>too</i> <i>rather</i> } <i>high</i>	<b>altissimus</b> , <i>highest</i> <i>most high</i> <i>very high</i>
<b>doctus</b> , <i>learned</i>	<b>doctior</b> , ..... <i>more learned</i> <i>too</i> <i>rather</i> } <i>learned</i>	<b>doctissimus</b> , ..... <i>most learned</i> <i>very learned</i>

The Comparative is formed by adding *ior* and the Superlative by adding *issimus* to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular; as,

Nominative	(Genitive)	Comparative	Superlative	
<b>altus</b> ,	( <b>alt-i,</b> )	<b>alt-ior</b> ,	<b>alt-issimus</b> ,	<i>high, etc.</i>
<b>levis</b> ,	( <b>lev-is,</b> )	<b>lev-ior</b> ,	<b>lev-issimus</b> ,	<i>light</i>
<b>fēlix</b> ,	( <b>fēlic-is,</b> )	<b>fēlic-ior</b> ,	<b>fēlic-issimus</b> ,	<i>fortunate</i>
<b>prūdēs</b> ,	( <b>prūdēt-is,</b> )	<b>prūdēt-ior</b> ,	<b>prūdēt-issimus</b> ,	<i>prudent</i>

### The Double r Superlatives

Adjectives in **er** form the Superlative in **rimus**

Positive	Comparative	Superlative	
<b>pulcher</b> ,	<b>pulchr-ior</b> ,	<b>pulcher-rimus</b> ,	<i>beautiful, etc.</i>
<b>liber</b> ,	<b>liber-ior</b> ,	<b>liber-rimus</b> ,	<i>free</i>
<b>ācer</b> ,	<b>ācr-ior</b> ,	<b>ācer-rimus</b> ,	<i>sharp</i>
<b>celer</b> ,	<b>celer-ior</b> ,	<b>celer-rimus</b> ,	<i>swift</i>
<b>vetus</b> ,	<b>veterior</b> , (rarely) <b>vetustior</b> , (mostly)	<b>veter-rimus</b> ,	<i>old</i>

### The Double l Superlatives

Six Adjectives in **ilis** form the Superlative in **limus**

Positive	Comparative	Superlative	
<b>facilis</b> ,	<b>facil-ior</b> ,	<b>facil-limus</b> ,	<i>easy, etc.</i>
<b>difficilis</b> ,	<b>difficil-ior</b> ,	<b>difficil-limus</b> ,	<i>difficult</i>
<b>similis</b> ,	<b>simil-ior</b> ,	<b>simil-limus</b> ,	<i>like</i>
<b>dissimilis</b> ,	<b>dissimil-ior</b> ,	<b>dissimil-limus</b> ,	<i>unlike</i>
<b>gracilis</b> ,	<b>gracil-ior</b> ,	<b>gracil-limus</b> ,	<i>thin</i>
<b>humilis</b> ,	<b>humil-ior</b> ,	<b>humil-limus</b> ,	<i>low, lowly</i>

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<b>bonus</b> , <i>good</i>	<b>melior</b> , <i>better</i>	<b>optimus</b> , <i>best</i>
<b>malus</b> , <i>bad</i>	<b>pējor</b> , <i>worse</i>	<b>pessimus</b> , <i>worst</i>
<b>magnus</b> , <i>great</i>	<b>mājor</b> , <i>greater</i>	<b>maximus</b> , <i>greatest</i>
<b>parvus</b> , { <i>small</i> <i>little</i>	<b>minor</b> , { <i>smaller</i> <i>less</i>	<b>minimus</b> , { <i>smallest</i> <i>least</i>
<b>multus</b> , <i>much</i>	<b>plūs</b> (neut.), <i>more</i>	<b>plūrimus</b> , <i>most</i>
<b>nēquam</b> (indecl.), <i>worthless, naughty</i> opposite of	<b>nēquior</b>	<b>nēquissimus</b>
<b>frūgi</b> (indecl.), <i>thrifty, frugal</i>	<b>frūgālīor</b>	<b>frūgālissimus</b>
<b>senex</b> , <i>old</i>	<b>senior</b>	<b>maximus nātū</b>
<b>juvenis</b> , <i>young</i>	<b>jūnior</b>	<b>minimus nātū</b>

Many adjectives, otherwise not comparable, especially those having a vowel before the terminal *us*, are thus compared:

**noxius**, *hurtful*                      **magis noxius**, *more hurtful*                      **maximē noxius**, *especially hurtful*

But if this letter before the terminal *us* be the consonant *u*, they can be compared regularly; as,

**antiquus**, *ancient*                      **antiquior**                      **antiquissimus**

### Exercises

#### A Adj. Pos.

1. Mōns altus.
2. Fēmina prūdēns.
3. Animal pulchrum.
4. Equus celer.
5. Carmen vetus.
6. Mōtus facilis.
7. Rēs difficilis.
8. Minister humilis.

#### D

1. Agricola bonus.
2. Magister malus.
3. Hortus magnus.
4. Ager parvus.
5. Rēgīna bona.
6. Lēx mala.
7. Urbs magna.
8. Nūbēs parva.

#### G

1. A good reward.
2. A bad poem.
3. A great work.
4. A little head.

#### B Adj. Comp.

1. Mōns altior.
2. Fēmina prūdēntior.
3. Animal pulchrius.
4. Equa celerior.
5. Carmen vetustius.
6. Mōtus facilior.
7. Rēs difficilior.
8. Mulier humilior.

#### E

1. Agricola melior.
2. Magister pējor.
3. Hortus mājor.
4. Ager minor.
5. Rēgīna melior.
6. Lēx pējor.
7. Urbs mājor.
8. Nūbēs minor.

#### H

1. A better reward.
2. A worse poem.
3. A greater work.
4. A smaller head.

#### C Adj. Sup.

1. Mōns altissimus.
2. Fēmina prūdētissima.
3. Animal pulcherrimum.
4. Pullus equinus celerrimus.
5. Carmen veterrimum.
6. Mōtus facillimus.
7. Rēs difficillima.
8. Servus humillimus.

#### F

1. Agricola optimus.
2. Magister pessimus.
3. Hortus maximus.
4. Ager minimus.
5. Rēgīna optima.
6. Lēx pessima.
7. Urbs maxima.
8. Nūbēs minima.

#### I

1. The best reward.
2. The worst poem.
3. The greatest work.
4. The smallest head.

NOTE 1.—**Magis** signifies *more* (in quality or degree); **plūs**, *more* (in quantity or measure).

NOTE 2.—Positives are declined in various ways. Comparatives are declined like **tristior**. Superlatives are declined like **bonus**.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

An Adverb is a word used to modify a Verb, an Adjective, or another Adverb.

Most Adverbs of Manner are derived from Adjectives.

### Adverbs formed from Adjectives of 1st and 2d Declensions

Adjectives of the 1st and 2d Declensions change the final *i* of the Genitive Singular Masculine into *-ē* to form the Positive and Superlative Degrees of the Adverb; while the Accusative Singular Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective forms the Comparative of the Adverb.

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
<i>Adj.</i>	<b><i>lātus</i></b> , <i>broad</i>	<b><i>lātior</i></b>	<b><i>lātissimus</i></b>
	G. S. M. <b><i>lāt-i</i></b>	A. S. N. <b><i>lātius</i></b>	G. S. M. <b><i>lātissim-i</i></b>
<i>Adv.</i>	<b><i>lātē</i></b> , <i>broadly</i>	<b><i>lātius</i></b> , <i>more broadly</i> <i>too</i> } <i>broadly</i> <i>rather</i> }	<b><i>lātissimē</i></b> , <i>most broadly</i> <i>very broadly</i>

### Adverbs formed from Adjectives of 3d Declension

Adjectives of the 3d Declension change the *is* final of the Genitive Singular Masculine into *iter* to form the Positive Degree of the Adverb.

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
<i>Adj.</i>	<b><i>fortis</i></b> , <i>brave</i>	<b><i>fortior</i></b>	<b><i>fortissimus</i></b>
	G. S. M. <b><i>fort-is</i></b>	A. S. N. <b><i>fortius</i></b>	G. S. M. <b><i>fortissim-i</i></b>
<i>Adv.</i>	<b><i>fortiter</i></b> , <i>bravely</i>	<b><i>fortius</i></b>	<b><i>fortissimē</i></b>

### Exceptions

<i>Adj.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
(cs)	<b><i>audax</i></b> , <i>bold</i> ,	( <b><i>audāc-is</i></b> )	<b><i>audacter</i></b> , <i>boldly</i>	<b><i>audācius</i></b>	<b><i>audācissimē</i></b>
(ns)	<b><i>diligēns</i></b> , <i>diligent</i> ,	( <b><i>diligent-is</i></b> )	<b><i>diligenter</i></b> , <i>diligently</i>	<b><i>diligentius</i></b>	<b><i>diligentissimē</i></b>
(rs)	<b><i>sollers</i></b> , { <i>skilful</i> },	( <b><i>sollert-is</i></b> )	<b><i>sollerter</i></b> { <i>skilfully</i> <i>shrewdly</i> }	<b><i>sollertius</i></b>	<b><i>sollertissimē</i></b>

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Adj's.	Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
<b>bonus, good</b>	<b>bene, well</b>	<b>melius, better</b>	<b>optimē, best</b>
<b>malus, bad</b>	<b>male, ill</b>	<b>pōjus, worse</b>	<b>pessimē, worst</b>
<b>magnus, great</b>	<b>magnopere, greatly</b>	<b>magis, more</b> (in degree)	<b>maximē, especially</b>
<b>multus, much</b>	<b>multum, much</b>	<b>plūs, more</b> (in quantity)	<b>plūrimum, most</b>
<b>parvus, little</b>	<b>parum</b> { <i>too little</i> <i>not enough</i>	<b>minus, less</b>	<b>minimē, least</b>
	<b>saepe, often</b>	<b>saepius</b>	<b>saepissimē</b>
	<b>prope, near</b>	<b>propius</b>	<b>proximē</b>
	<b>diū, long</b>	<b>diūtius</b>	<b>diūtissimē</b>

## ADVERBS WITHOUT COMPARISON\*

Adverbs of Place			Adverbs of Time	Adverbs of Manner
<b>hic, here</b>	<b>hūc, hither</b>	<b>hinc, hence</b>	<b>nunc, now</b>	<b>sic, so, thus</b>
<b>ibi, there</b>	<b>eō, thither</b>	<b>inde, thence</b>	<b>dum, while</b>	<b>vērē, truly</b>
<b>illīc, there</b>	<b>illūc, thither</b>	<b>illinc, thence</b>	<b>mox, presently</b>	<b>male, badly</b>
<b>istīc, there</b>	<b>istūc, thither</b>	<b>istinc, thence</b>	<b>jam, already</b>	<b>bene, well</b>
<b>ubi, where</b>	<b>quō, whither</b>	<b>unde, whence</b>	<b>unquam, ever</b>	
<b>alibi, elsewhere</b>			<b>numquam, never</b>	
<b>undique, everywhere</b>			<b>semper, always</b>	
<b>usquam, anywhere</b>			<b>cum</b> { <i>temporal, when</i> <i>causal, since</i> <i>concessive, although</i>	
<b>nusquam, nowhere</b>			<b>tunc (tum), then</b>	

### Adverbs of Degree and Cause

**cūr, why.** Cūr? *Why?*  
**quod, quia, because**  
**ita, sic, so**  
**ut** { with Indic. *as*  
 { with Subj. *that*

**etiam, even, also**

### Adverbs of Negation

**nōn, not.** Nōn! *No!*  
**minimē, least of all.** Minimē! *Not at all!*  
**nē, lest**  
**quīn, but that.** Quīn? *Why not?*

**Rule of Position.**—Adverbs normally precede the words they modify.

\* Many words are used both as Adverbs and as Conjunctions.

## THE NUMBERS

The Numbers are called Numeral Adjectives.

Arabic	Cardinals	Ordinals	Roman
1.	<i>ſinus, a, um, one</i>	<i>primus, a, um, first</i>	I
2.	<i>duo, ae, o, two</i>	<i>ſecundus, a, um, ſecond</i>	II
3.	<i>trēs, tria, three</i>	<i>tertius, a, um, third</i>	III
4.	<i>quattuor, four</i>	<i>quārtus, a, um, fourth</i>	III or IV
5.	<i>quinque, five</i>	<i>quintus, a, um, fifth</i>	V
6.	<i>ſex, ſix</i>	<i>ſextus, a, um, ſixth</i>	VI
7.	<i>ſeptem, ſeven</i>	<i>ſeptimus</i>	VII
8.	<i>octō, eight</i>	<i>octāvus</i>	VIII
9.	<i>novem, nine</i>	<i>nōnus</i>	VIII or IX
10.	<i>decem, ten</i>	<i>decimus</i>	X
11.	<i>ūndecim</i>	<i>ūndecimus</i>	XI
12.	<i>duodecim</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>	XII
13.	<i>tredecim, (decem et trēs)</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>	XIII
14.	<i>quattuordecim</i>	<i>quārtus decimus</i>	XIII or XIV
15.	<i>quindecim</i>	<i>quintus decimus</i>	XV
16.	<i>ſōdecim or ſexdecim</i>	<i>ſextus decimus</i>	XVI
17.	<i>ſeptendecim</i>	<i>ſeptimus decimus</i>	XVII
18.	<i>duodēvigintī</i>	<i>duodēvicēſimus</i>	XVIII
19.	<i>ūndēvigintī</i>	<i>ūndēvicēſimus</i>	XVIII or XIX
20.	<i>vigintī</i>	<i>vicēſimus</i>	XX
21.	<i>vigintī ſinus or ſinus et vigintī</i>	<i>ſinus et vicēſimus or vicēſimus primus</i>	XXI
22.	<i>vigintī duo or duo et vigintī</i>	<i>alter et vicēſimus or vicēſimus ſecundus</i>	XXII
28.	<i>duodētrigintā</i>	<i>duodētricēſimus</i>	XXVIII
29.	<i>ūndētrigintā</i>	<i>ūndētricēſimus</i>	XXVIII or XXIX
30.	<i>trigintā</i>	<i>tricēſimus</i>	XXX
40.	<i>quadrāgintā</i>	<i>quadrāgēſimus</i>	XXXX or XL
50.	<i>quingūāgintā</i>	<i>quingūāgēſimus</i>	L
60.	<i>ſexāgintā</i>	<i>ſexāgēſimus</i>	LX
70.	<i>ſeptuāgintā</i>	<i>ſeptuāgēſimus</i>	LXX
80.	<i>octōgintā</i>	<i>octōgēſimus</i>	LXXX
90.	<i>nōnāgintā</i>	<i>nōnāgēſimus</i>	LXXXX or XC
98.	<i>duodēcentum</i>	<i>duodēcentēſimus</i>	LXXXXVIII or XCVIII
99.	<i>ūndēcentum</i>	<i>ūndēcentēſimus</i>	LXXXXVIII or XCIX
100.	<i>centum</i>	<i>centēſimus</i>	C
500.	<i>quingentī</i>	<i>quingentēſimus</i>	D
1000.	<i>mille</i>	<i>millēſimus</i>	M



## EXERCISES

Cardinals	Cardinals	Ordinals	Ordinals
Latin	English	Latin	English
(a) ūnus vir	(a) one woman	(a) vir primus	(a) the first woman
(b) duo puerī	(b) two girls	(b) puer secundus	(b) the second girl
(c) trēs liberi	(c) three roses	(c) nauta tertius	(c) the third gate
(d) quattuor scribæ	(d) four violets	(d) auriga quārtus	(d) the fourth farmer
(e) quinque horti	(e) five horses	(e) insula quinta	(e) the fifth gem
(f) sex nuntii	(f) six rivers	(f) hortus sextus	(f) the sixth apple-tree
(g) septem magistri	(g) seven servants	(g) caper septimus	(g) the seventh field
(h) octō regna	(h) eight rocks	(h) templum octāvum	(h) the eighth reward
(i) novem virginēs	(i) nine lions	(i) flōs nōnus	(i) the ninth mouse
(j) decem lēgēs	(j) ten voices	(j) fax decima	(j) the tenth leader
(k) ūndecim trabēs	(k) eleven cities	(k) princeps ūndecimus	(k) the eleventh fowler
(l) duodecim lapidēs	(l) twelve feet	(l) nūbēs duodecima	(l) the twelfth tooth
(m) tredecim suēs	(m) thirteen oxen	(m) sūstertiusdecimus	(m) the thirteenth ox
(n) quattuordecim carmina	(n) fourteen animals	(n) fulmen quārtum decimum	(n) the fourteenth name
(o) quindecim corpora	(o) fifteen heads	(o) filius quīntus decimus	(o) the fifteenth daughter
(p) sexāgintā senēs	(p) sixty-one seats	(p) lacus sexāgēsimus	(p) the sixty-second house
(q) septuāgintā passūs	(q) seventy-three chariots	(q) versus septuāgēsimus	(q) the seventy-fourth day
(r) octōgintā faciēs	(r) eighty-five rows	(r) insula octōgēsima	(r) the eighty-sixth sailor
(s) nōnāgintā sex equi	(s) ninety-seven slaves	(s) templum duodēcentēsimum	(s) the 99th servant
(t) centum principēs	(t) one hundred rocks	(t) lapis centēsimus	(t) the 100th maiden

**NOTE.**—Little children begin Arithmetic by counting their ten fingers. The first men probably did the same. From the ten fingers have come down to us our Decimal System of Numbers, and also our decimal money, cents, dimes, dollars, eagles.

When the Roman schoolboy raised his little hand to count he saw not only five ones but one V. On his two hands were two V's. Crossing his two **index**-fingers, two V's point to point made X. Holding up his right hand half open he made the letter C, **Centum, 100**. Repeating the operation four times with thumb opposite each finger severally he made four C's, but the effort to compel his thumb to make a fifth C gave him a D, **500, a Dextra**. His two hands, **Manūs**, held up together, D to D, made him an M, **Mille, 1000**.

In measuring his land, in counting his money, the old Roman began his numbers in this simple way. Later the straight marks on the paper, formerly fingers, became *digits*. With such clumsy notation the Romans therefore made very little progress in arithmetic, even during one thousand years; yet those old Roman numbers are seen on almost every clock in America to this day.

**Rule of Position.**—Cardinals normally precede their nouns; Ordinals normally follow.

## DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

The Cardinals are all Indeclinable except *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *mīlia*

Sing.	M.	F.	N.	Plur.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ūnūs</i>	<i>ūnūs</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duo, duōs</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ūne</i>	—	—		(Vocative wanting)		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>

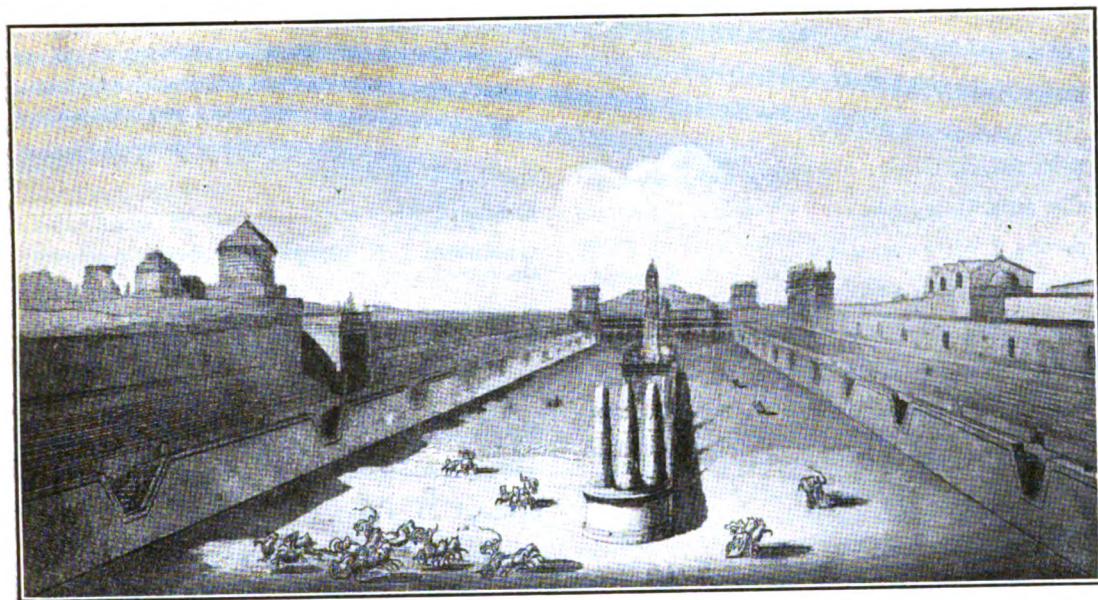
Plur.	M.	F.	N.	Plur.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnae</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>	<i>ūnārum</i>	<i>ūnōrum</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ūnis</i>	<i>ūnis</i>	<i>ūnis</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ūnōs</i>	<i>ūnās</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>trēs, trīs</i>	<i>tria</i>
	—	—	—		(Vocative wanting)	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ūnis</i>	<i>ūnis</i>	<i>ūnis</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
						(Voc. wanting)
						<i>mīlia</i>
						<i>mīlium</i>
						<i>mīlibus</i>
						<i>mīlia</i>
						<i>mīlibus</i>

NOTE.—*Mille*, *Thousand*, is an Indeclinable Adjective; *Mīlia*, *Thousands*, is a Neuter Noun.

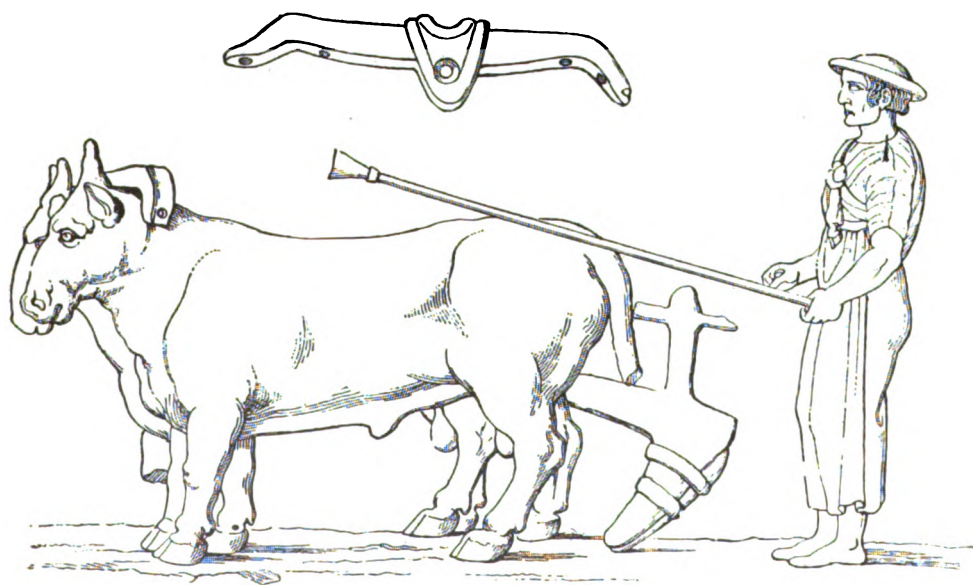
## THE ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH

1 <i>digitus</i>	= .7281 English inches
4 <i>digiti</i> , <i>finger-breadths</i>	= 1 <i>palmus</i> , <i>hand-breadth</i>
2 <i>palmi</i>	= 1 <i>sēmipēs</i> , <i>half-foot</i>
4 <i>palmi</i>	= 1 <i>pēs</i> , <i>foot</i> , = 11.6496 English inches
1½ <i>pedēs</i> ( <i>seequipes</i> )	= 1 <i>cubitum</i> , <i>fore-arm</i> , (tip of elbow to end of middle finger)
2½ <i>pedēs</i>	= 1 <i>gradus</i> , <i>step</i>
2 <i>gradūs</i>	= 1 <i>passus</i> , <i>pace</i> , (double step)
125 <i>passūs</i>	= 1 <i>stadium</i> , <i>furlong</i> , (race-course), = ¼th of a Roman mile
1000 <i>passūs</i>	= 1 <i>mille passūs</i> , <i>mile</i> , (a thousand paces), = 4854 English feet

A Masc.	B Fem.	C Neut.
1. Bonus equus <i>ūnus</i> .	1. Albae rosae <i>duae</i> .	1. Parva animālia <i>tria</i> .
2. Fortis nautae <i>ūnūs</i> .	2. Parvārum violārum <i>duārum</i> .	2. Gravium corporum <i>trium</i> .
3. Ignāvō virō <i>ūnī</i> .	3. Benignis fēminis <i>duābus</i> .	3. Rotundis capitibus <i>tribus</i> .
4. Lātōrum fluviōrum quattuor.	4. Magnārum urbium quīnque.	4. Atrōrum saxōrum <i>sex</i> .
5. Audācibus leōnibus <i>septem</i> .	5. Rāris gemmīs <i>octō</i> .	5. Parvis poēmatibus <i>novem</i> .
D	E	F
1. Primī pueri <i>industrii</i> .	1. Secundae puellae <i>prudentis</i> .	1. Tertii templi <i>antiqui</i> .
2. Quārti servi <i>ignāvi</i> .	2. Quīntae virginis <i>pulchrae</i> .	2. Septimī magni <i>praemii</i> .
3. Octāvō agricolae <i>industriō</i> .	3. Decimae hiemī <i>tristi</i> .	3. Duodecimō carmini <i>parvō</i> .
4. Vicēsīmī secundi <i>agri</i> .	4. Septuāgēsimae <i>lucernae</i> .	4. Tricēsīmī tertii <i>funeris</i> .
5. Septuāgēsīmō primō <i>caprō</i> .	5. Octōgēsimae <i>candēlae</i> .	5. Centēsimum <i>lūmen</i> .
G	H	
1. One proud father has four strong sons.	1. One noble mother has three lovely daughters.	
2. Two new consuls praise five new laws.	2. Three little girls have twelve white roses.	
3. Four old charioteers have eight chariots.	3. Five sagacious scribes have fifteen names.	
4. The farmer has 97 fat cattle.	4. A man has 76 wretched swine.	
5. The girls have 89 beautiful flowers.	5. The good strong horse has 40 teeth.	



**CIRCUS MAXIMUS  
THE GREAT ROMAN RACE-COURSE**



**BOVES ET ARATUM**

## VOCABULARY—ANIMALS MOSTLY TAME

<b>canis, is, C.</b> <i>a dog</i>	<b>ariēs, arietis, M.</b> <i>a ram</i>
<b>fēlis, is, F.</b> <i>a cat</i>	<b>agnus, i, M.</b> <i>a lamb</i>
<b>mūs, mūris, C. Gr.</b> <i>a mouse,</i> <small>(including rat, martin, sable, ermine)</small>	<b>caper, pri, M.</b> <i>a goat</i>
<b>sūs, suis, C.</b> <i>a swine</i>	<b>haedus, i, M.</b> <i>a kid</i>
<b>porcus, i, M.</b> <i>a pig, a hog</i>	<b>armentum, i, N.</b> <i>plough-cattle, (oxen)</i> <i>aro, I plow</i>
<b>aper, apri, M.</b> <i>a wild boar</i>	<b>jumentum, i, N.</b> { <i>draught-cattle,</i> <i>jungo, I yoke</i> { <i>beasts of burden</i> <span style="margin-left: 150px;"><small>(especially horses, mules, asses)</small></span>
<b>pecus, oris, N.</b> <i>a herd of cattle</i>	<b>asinus, i, M.</b> <i>an ass</i>
<b>grex, gregis, M.</b> <i>a flock, herd, drove</i>	<b>onager, gri, M. Gr.</b> <i>a wild ass, (perhaps the zebra)</i>
<b>bōs, bovis, C.</b> <i>an ox</i> <i>boo, I roar</i>	<b>mūlus, i, M.</b> <i>a mule</i>
<b>taurus, i, M. Gr.</b> <i>a bull</i>	<b>equus, i, M.</b> <i>a horse</i>
<b>vacca, ae, F.</b> <i>a cow</i>	<b>caballus, i, M.</b> <i>a nag, (the pack-horse)</i>
<b>juvenca, ae, F.</b> <i>a heifer</i>	<b>glis, gliris, M.</b> <i>a dormouse</i>
<b>ovis, ovis, F.</b> <i>a sheep</i>	

### Sentences

- | A   | B  |
|---|--|
| 1. Lupī canibus similēs sunt.— <i>Cic.</i>  | 1. Caper Bacchō sacrificiō erat.   |
| 2. Canis ācer leporem vēnātur.<br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>hunts</i></span>   | 2. Neque ego hominēs magis asinōs umquam<br>vidi.— <i>Plaut.</i><br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>have I seen</i></span>        |
| 3. Canis, catēnā vinctus, jānuam custōdivit.<br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>guarded</i></span>                         | 3. Instar montis equum divinā Palladis arte<br>aedificant.— <i>Verg.</i><br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>of Minerva</i></span> |
| 4. Sunt albi dentēs in ōre apri.  | 4. Mūli sunt quī pretiō superant equōs.<br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>which</i></span>                                       |
| 5. Cerberus tergeminus canis Plūtōnis erat.<br><span style="margin-left: 50px;"><i>Cerberus three headed</i></span>             | 5. Mūlum dē asinō pingit.— <i>Prov.</i>  |
| 6. Diogenes vōcem canis habuit.   | 6. Equus Martī sacrificiō erat.  |
| 7. Egyptiī sacrum et fēlem et canem et croco-<br>dilum habuērunt.<br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>considered</i></span> | 7. Equi dōnāti dentēs nōn inspicuntur.— <i>Prov.</i><br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>are inspected</i></span>                  |
| 8. Rusticus mūs urbānum mūrem nōn amat.   | 8. Mediā dē nocte caballum arripit.— <i>Hor.</i><br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>he seizes</i></span>                          |
| 9. Sunt domī agnī, et porcī pinguēs.  | 9. Optat ephippia bōs piger, optat arāre<br>caballus.— <i>Hor.</i><br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>to plow</i></span>          |
| 10. Villa abundat porcō, haedō, agnō, gallinā.—<br><i>Cic.</i>  | 10. Ambulat tamquam caballus in clivō.—† <i>Petr.</i>  |
| 11. Unō saltū duōs aprōs capit.— <i>Prov.</i><br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>he takes</i></span>                       |  |
| 12. Ovem lupō committit.— <i>Prov.</i><br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>he entrusts</i></span>                           |  |
| 13. Agnum lupō ēripere vult.— <i>Prov.</i><br><span style="margin-left: 150px;"><i>to rescue he wishes</i></span>               |  |

## VOCABULARY—ANIMALS MOSTLY WILD

**animal**, *ālis*, N. *an animal*  
**camēlus**, *i*, M. *a camel*  
**camēlopardus**, *i*, M. Gr. *a giraffe*  
**alces**, *is*, F. *the elk*  
**cervus**, *i*, M. *a deer*  
**ibex**, *ibicis*, M. *the chamois*  
**elephantus**, *i*, M. *an elephant*  
**rhinoceros**, *ōtis*, M. Gr. *the rhinoceros*  
**leō**, *leōnis*, M. *a lion*  
**tigris**, *is*, C. Gr. *a tiger, a tigress*

**hyaena**, *ae*, F. Gr. *a hyena*  
**panthēra**, *ae*, F. Gr. *a panther*  
**leopardus**, *i*, M. Gr. *a leopard*  
**lynx**, *lyncis*, C. Gr. *a lynx*  
**lepus**, *oris*, M. *a hare*  
**lupus**, *i*, M. *a wolf*  
**ursus**, *i*, M. *a bear*  
**vulpes**, *is*, F. *a fox*  
**sciūrus**, *i*, M. Gr. *a squirrel*  
**simius**, *i*, M. *an ape*  
**crocōdilus**, *i*, M. Gr. *a crocodile*

NOTE.—Great modern cities maintain Zoölogical Gardens for the *instruction* of the citizens. Wild animals are caught, transported and kept at enormous expense, that society may see them and learn. With no less pains were they caught and collected 2000 years ago, but with two points of difference. Thousands and thousands of wild animals were collected for old Rome; but it was done merely for the *amusement* of the people, and they all came only *to die*. Such is one of the triumphs of Christian civilization.

The Camelopard, brought from the Cataracts of the Nile, was first exhibited to the Roman people by Julius Caesar. It was always a rare treat. But the Camel apparently never or very rarely came to Rome. He appears to have been a native domestic of almost all the known regions of Africa, Asia, and Russia, a patient burden-bearer for long, tiresome desert journeys. When brought to Rome, he came as a great curiosity, along with the wild animals, having sometimes one, sometimes two humps upon his back.

Elephants were used by the Carthaginians in Africa in battle. When captured they were brought up to Rome, and turned loose in the Colosseum to battle the fierce lions and tigers to please the people.

Lions appear to have been very much more abundant in ancient times than now. They were found then in Europe and Asia, as well as in Africa. Travelers in the north of Greece were attacked by lions. On the hills of Palestine the youthful David tending his father's sheep smote and slew the lion and took "out of his mouth" the lamb he had stolen. Daniel was also thrown into a den of lions.

Lions would skulk and leap upon the backs of the camels in the desert places of Syria, Arabia and Persia. One learned traveler on his way to India writes that he saw a lioness with eight young near the city of Babylon. Great numbers were caught and carried to Rome, to fight in the arena for the amusement of the people. Caesar gave the people 400; which was no uncommon treat. Another ancient writer tells of the great size and beauty of the Indian lions with their black tinted furs. These were said to be trained for the chase, as the elephant is today.

The Rhinoceros Asiaticus was the Unicorn we read of in the Bible, while the Rhinoceros Africus was a monster with two horns.

The Tiger was discovered for the Greeks by Alexander the Great, who borrowed also his Armenian name, leaping "quick as an arrow."

No wild animals caught for the arena of the Colosseum were more welcome than the leopard and the panther, with their beautiful spotted skins. Deep pits were dug as traps for them in their favorite paths, then covered up with sticks and leaves; or else they were taken as cubs from the mother's lair in the wild woods. Trapping was a great business, employing many men.

Stags were believed to feed upon the parsnip, a garden vegetable much prized today, in order that they might be immune from the bites of snakes.

Modern scholars are wont to tell us that the wolf is the ancestor of the dog. In Roman days the dog was a domestic wolf. The breed they most admired was the British mastiff. It was brought to Rome as a big ugly fighter among all the wild animals of the Colosseum.

The squirrel received his name *Sciūrus* from the Greeks, because he always carried along his tail for a sun-shade over his back.

## VOCABULARIES—EARTH

### I

- terra, ae, F.** *a land, a country*  
**insula, ae, F.** *an island*  
**paeninsula, ae, F.** *a peninsula*  
**mōns, tis, M.** *a mountain*  
**valles, is, F.** *a valley*  
**collis, is, M.** *a hill*  
**plānitīēs, ēi, F.** *a plain*  
**palus, ūdis, F.** *a bog, a swamp*  
**dēserta, ōrum, N.** *A Desert, (desert places)*  
**Delta, N.** (Indel.) *Gr. The Delta (of the Nile)*  
**prōmunturium, ii, N.** *a mountain-ridge,*  
(a headland jutting into the sea)

### II

- ager, agrī, M.** *a field*  
**arvum, arvi, an** *arable field, (plow land)*  
**prātum, ī, N.** *a meadow*  
**hortus, ī, M.** *a garden*  
**jūgerum, ī, N.** *a Roman acre*  
**pāgus, ī, M.** *a district, a canton*  
**vicus, ī, M.** *a village, (in the country.)*  
(a row of houses by the roadside)  
**rūs, rūris, N.** *"The Country,"*  
(oppos. to Urbs, "The City")  
**campus, ī, M.** *"The Campus,"*  
(any open field, or City Park)  
**territōrium, ii, N.** *a territory,*  
(open country around a town)

### Sentences

#### A

1. Orbis terrārum est rotundus et plānus tamquam patella.
2. Italia est terra in Eurōpā.
3. Italia est paeninsula.
4. Sicilia est insula in Eurōpā.
5. Britannia est insula.
6. Caesar ex terrā Galliā in insulam Britanniam nāvigāvit.  
*sailed*
7. Caesar iter in Britanniam terrā marique fēcit.  
*made*
8. Aenēas Libyae dēserta peragrāvit, et Eurōpā et Asiā expulsus.  
*wandered o'er*
9. Nili ostia septem Delta formāvērunt.  
*formed*
10. Ager Campānus orbis terrae pulcherrimus est.—*Cic.*
11. Rōmae urbis collēs septem fuērunt: Mōns Palātinus, Collis Quirinālis, Mōns Capitōlinus, Mōns Caelius, Mōns Esquilinus, Mōns Aventīnus, Collis Viminālis.
12. Aegyptum Nilus irrigat.—*Cic.*
13. Persae aquam terramque ā Lacedaemoniis petiērunt.  
*demanded*
14. Erat inter oppidum et collem plānitīēs.—*Caes.*
15. Propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn est.—*Caes.*

#### B

1. Ager est terra culta manibus hominum, ut frūgēs ferat.  
*that it may bear*
2. Nōn arvum est hoc, sed pascuus est ager.—  
† *Plaut.* *this*
3. Rōmānī hortōs pulchrōs amāvērunt.
4. Cōsul hortum civis laudat.
5. Hortōs sub urbe lātē colunt.—† *I'arr.*
6. Ad cēnam hominem in hortōs invitāvit in posterum diem.—*Cic.*
7. Hortus prior pinguis et rusticus dēliciārum causā flōrēs fert, hortus posterior cibī causā holus fert.  
*produce in the rear*
8. Rūs pinguēs agrōs, dēnsās silvās, pascua prāta, magnās palūdēs, et pulchrās villās habet.
9. Rūs it. Rōmam redit.
10. Omnis civitas Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est.—*Caes.*  
*has been divided*
11. Suēvī centum pāgōs habuērunt.  
*The Suevi*
12. Jūgerum est mēnsūra ex ducentis et quadrāgintā pedibus in longitudinem, centum et vigintī in lātitudinem.—† *Plin.*
13. Jūgerum vocābātur, quod ūnō jugō boum in diē exarārī posset.  
*it was called because be plowed up it could*
14. Jūgera multa prātōrum fluvii facillimē irrigant.

III

- terra**, ae, F. *land*, (opp. to sea and sky)  
**solum**, i, N. { 1. *the bottom*  
 2. *soil, land*, (real estate)  
**humus**, i, F. *the ground*  
**harēna**, ae, F. *sand*  
**limus**, i, M. *mire, filth, slime*  
**lutum**, i, N. *mud*  
**glæba**, ae, F. *a clod (of earth)*, *glebe*  
**argilla**, ae, F. Gr. *potter's clay*  
**pulvis**, oris, M. *dust*  
**calx**, calcis, F. *lime*  
**calculus**, i, M. *a pebble*  
**lapis**, idis, M. *a stone*  
**saxum**, i, N. *a rock*  
**scrūplus**, i, M. { 1. *a small sharp stone*  
 2. *difficulty, anxiety*  
**rūpēs**, is, F. *a steep rock*, (crag, cliff)  
**caementum**, i, N. *unhewn stone*, (freshly quarried)  
**pūmex**, icis, M. *a pumice-stone*

A

1. Terrae mōtūs sunt terribilēs.
2. Humus erat ūmida.
3. Nebula ex humō ūmidā surgit.
4. Humum ūmidam pedibus fōdit.—*Laev.*  
raises he dug
5. Sicut harēna quae est in litore maris.—*Vulg.*
6. Flūmina ad mare lutum et limum aggerunt.  
convey
7. Ventus nūbēs pulveris vehit.  
carries
8. Prospectum oculōrum nūbēs pulveris abstulit.—*Curt.*  
look away
9. Minister pulverem ob oculōs magistri aspergit.  
throws
10. Sulcōs in pulvere dūcit.—*Prov.*  
he traces
11. Mathēmatici formās in pulvere dēscribunt.
12. Lapis nōn saxum est.—*Plin.*
13. Structor mortārium ex calce vivā et harēnā mixtā parat.  
quick
14. Dēmōsthenēs calculōs linguā volvēns dicere domi solēbat.—*Quint.*  
used to speak
15. Hominēs nefāriōs et scelestōs ex rūpe Tarpēiā praecipitant.  
Tarpeian they throw head foremost

IIII

- marmor**, oris, N. Gr. *marble*  
**gemma**, ae, F. *a gem*, (a jewel)  
**margarita**, ae, F. um, i, N. Gr. *a pearl*  
**crystallum**, i, N. Gr. *a crystal*  
**onyx**, ychis, C. Gr. *onyx*, (a yellowish marble)  
**sardonyx**, ychis, C. Gr. *sardonyx*, (marble with veins of red)  
**amethystus**, i, F. Gr. *amethyst*, (a violet-blue gem)  
**ēlectrum**, i, N. Gr. } *amber*  
**sūcinum**, i, N. }  
sucus, juice  
**magnes**, ētis, M. Gr. *a loadstone*, (magnet)  
**lychnites**, ae, M. Gr. *white marble*, (quarried by lamp-light in Paros)  
**silex**, icis, M. *a flint*  
**sulfur**, uris, N. *sulphur*  
**tōfus**, i, M. *tufa*  
**adamas**, antis, M. Gr. { 1. *adamant*, (the hardest iron, or steel)  
 2. *the diamond*  
**aes**, aeris, N. { *ore*, (not gold or silver)  
*bronze*, (= copper and tin)  
*money*, (in rough lumps, in coins)

Sentences

B

1. Parium marmor deīs grātissimum erat.
2. Sculptōrēs omnēs marmor candidum ē Parō insulā amant. Lychnitēs est huic nōmen,  
for this  
 quoniam ad lucernās in cuniculis caeditur.  
mines it is quarried
3. Oceanus margarita gignit.—*Tac.*  
propagates
4. Nē mittātis margaritās vestrās ante porcōs.  
cast ye your
5. Rēsina aut sūcus arboris pīneae lapidescēns in aquā marinā sūcinum fēcit.  
petrifying made
6. Mātrōnae Rōmānae pilam ēlectri in manibus suis rēfrigerandi eas causā portāvērunt.  
their of cooling them carried
7. Coquus silici scintillam excūdit.—*Virg.*  
struck out of
8. Fulmen odōrem sulfuris relinquit.  
leaves behind
9. Aes metalli nōmen erat, ex aere Cypriō et plumbō albō compositi.  
Cyprian
10. Emptor aes in zōnā portat.  
girdle carries
11. Vir aes aliēnum amīci suscēpit.  
assumed
12. Rōmānī gemmās circiter quattuordecim habuērunt, quārum adamantem maximō pretiō aestimāvērunt.  
of which they estimated
13. Lacrimās marmora mānant.—*Or.*  
trickle

## EARTH—THE ROMAN IDEA

Greece and Italy are the twin peninsulas of southern Europe. Greece is often pictured as a human hand outspread upon the great mid-land sea; Italy as a horseman's boot, with heel, toe and spur; the three-cornered Island of Sicily being just off the tip of the toe; the great Apennine Mountain range forming the bone of the leg, reaching down to the tip of the toe, and over into Sicily. The instep, and the calf of the leg on the east were longtime the homes and haunts of mountain bandits, while the western bulge of the front of the leg, the center of civilization, was a fertile land with a balmy clime.

The black crumbling volcanic soils of these southwestern shores, bathed in Sahara's sea-softened breezes, and shorn of cold by the sheltering Apennines, grew the choicest wines, fruits and flowers. The peasant-farmers of olden times well knew this fact, and the finest agriculture flourished here. But as business-life in Rome, the great capital near by, grew more and more strenuous the wearied business-man, *negōtiātor*, craved relaxation. There were no great hotels, no sea-shore resorts for him to rest and hide in. Those quiet little peasant-farms on the sunny slopes of Campania, so lonely and so lovely, finally caught his eye.

The Elder Scipio Africanus was the first great Roman to buy such a peasant-farm for a country villa, a refuge from city care and city noise. Other rich Romans bought peasant-farms. On such farms we read of two villas, *Villa rustica*, the farm-house, and *Villa urbāna*, the city-house. Men like Scipio loved the real country life, the charming scenes of the *inner court*, the *cors interior* of the *Villa rustica*: the teams, the herds at evening drinking from the villa's native spring, the geese and ducks merrily splashing, the swarms of chattering poultry all-expectant, the kindly slaves ministering to these or preparing the savory supper.

Men like the Younger Scipio Africanus preferred the leisure and the luxury of the *portico*, the sun-parlor, and the cozy chambers of the *Villa urbāna*.

Change of scene suggested a succession of homes. Cicero had six villas. Choice spots had won his eye, havens from trouble and toil where he could rest and write his many books, so valuable to the student of today. To have several villas was not uncommon. The villa site with charming views, just under the brow of some sheltering hill, catching winter suns or summer shades, in pleasant hearing of gurgling streams, was ever a prize to possess. The stretch of country from Rome to the volcano Vesuvius became after the Christian Era a region of villas. Campania Felix was then the garden spot of Italy, entered by the famous Appian Way.

The great Po Valley in the north was also fertile, but most of the lands of Italy were low in the scale of fertility, returning perhaps 10 to 1, while those of Egypt, Palestine and Babylon brought 100 to 1. The peasant-farmer of the mountain was often wont to raise his family on bread of chestnut-meal, and beans for meat. Little wonder then that men bred on such rigorous diet should become world-conquerors.

Travelers who climbed mountains for scenery's sake were very few. The majesty of mountains inspired only horror. The yawning chasm, the roaring avalanche, the eternal snow, the



## EARTH—THE ROMAN IDEA

biting cold, all these were untried terrors. The heart of the Alps was ever a *terra incognita et horrida*. The Romans hated mountains, in vivid contrast with the mountain climbers of the present day. Mount Etna, in Sicily, was the only mountain which they ascended for the view and for scientific study.

It was the sunny slopes of the Apennines that suited the old-time Roman. There he found comfort or luxury, beauty or value. Those Apennine foot-hills afforded many colored earths for the fresco wall-pictures, which charm the traveler still; crystal for the wine cups, berimmed with gold; crystal, which the philosophers taught was merely *ice*, so hardened it could never melt; marbles also of many hues, for pillars and inside walls, or cut in tiny squares for mosaic floors like the Muses' caves, whence the name. The Roman ever loved Nature, the grove, the grotto, the green, the country, as it is in plain and valley.

On the western shores of our two Americas volcanoes appear and earthquakes occur because, scientists say, there the earth's crust is thin. Likewise in Italy on the west of the Apennines the traveler today may see the active volcano, or may explore the craters of many long ago extinct. These volcanoes pouring out materials through the ages have built out and up above sea-level the fertile plains of Latium and Campania.

Volumes of ash and cinder overwhelmed Pompeii and Herculaneum. Herculaneum was nearer the foot of Vesuvius, and therefore the covering was denser and harder; accompanied also by vast quantities of water, it became cemented, so that now it is like rock to excavate, and is called *Volcanic Tufa*. Through the centuries rivers of heavy lava pouring into sea-bottoms were covered with layers of mud or broken sea shells. This is called *Calcareous Tufa*.

From the mines of the Lipari Islands, an off-shore group of seven, the world's supply of the finest snow-white *Pumice* is now obtained. It is merely lava *foam*, volcano *froth*; *sillex*, flint-stone once full of gas so light that it may float for days upon the sea or soar aloft in upper air.

On the upper Tiber, near the Falls of the Anio, the Tufa, layer on layer, is now 400 to 500 feet thick. This consolidated Tufa is known as *Travertine*.

The Travertine quarries under the City of Rome, wherefrom have long been obtained the **Caements**, the *unhewn blocks*, for building home and palace, were the famous Catacombs, the hiding place of the Christians.

South of Vesuvius long ago was left a very valuable deposit of volcanic ash of various colors. The Italians today call it *Pozzuolana*; we call it *Hydraulic Cement*. Volcanoes have often been cruel, but they have also been kind to the Romans. They have given them Tufa and Travertine for building their cities, cement for their own splendid Romanesque architecture, and inexhaustible fertility for their farms.

# VOCABULARIES—WATER

## I

aqua, ae, F. *water*  
 ūmor, ōris, M. *a liquid, moisture*  
 liquor, ōris, M. *a fluid*  
 bulla, ae, F. *a bubble*, (a child's amulet)  
 pluvia, ae, F. *rain*  
 imber, bris, M. (pouring) *rain*, (a pelting) *storm*  
 nix, nivis, F. *snow*  
 grandō, inis, F. *hail*  
 glaciēs, ōi, F. *ice*  
 gelum, i, N. or gelus, ūs, M. (hard) *frost, cold*  
 pruina, ae, F. *hoar-frost*  
 rōs, rōris, M. *dew*  
 spūma, ae, F. *sea-foam*

## II

Oceanus, i, M. *Ocean*  
 mare, is, N. *the sea*  
 lacus, ūs, M. *a lake*  
 sinus, ūs, M. *a gulf, a bay* (a fold of the toga upon the breast)  
 portus, ūs, M. *a harbor*  
 fretum, i, N. *a strait*  
 rīvus, i, M. *a brook*  
 amnis, is, M. *a stream*, (broad, deep, or rapid)  
 fluvius, ii, M. } *a river*  
 flūmen, inis, N. }  
 vadum, i, N. *a shoal, a ford, a wading-place*

## Sentences

### A

- Una rēs est aqua: ūnum ex quattuor elementis est, ex quibus mundus constat.  
*which consists*
- Aqua marina, aqua pluvialis, aqua nivālis, aqua prōfluēns, aqua stagnāns genera varia sunt.
- Aqua marina est amārissima.
- Pluvia est aqua dē nūbibus.
- Aqua nivālis ē nivibus mānat liquefactis.  
*trickles melted*
- Aqua prōfluēns in amnibus dēfluit.  
*flows down*
- Aqua stagnāns in stagnis quiescit.  
*lies still*
- Aqua fontium est semper pūra.
- Aqua flūminum est nōn saepe pūrissima.
- Glaciēs est aqua gelū concrēta.
- Grandō est imber gelū concrēta.
- Nix est nebula frigore concrēta.
- Pruina est rōs gelidus.
- Grandinis imbrēs in tōtō caelō appārent.
- Rūra gelū tum claudit hiems.—*Verg.*  
*shuts up*
- Dānuvius ripās gelū jungit.—*Plin.*
- Nivēs in altō mari non cadunt.—*Plin.*  
*fall*
- Cum rōs in tenerā herbā est, tum grātissima pecorī est.
- Aurōra gelidōs rōrēs remittit.  
*lets go*
- Sonitus multārum aquārum aurem ferit.  
*strikes*

### B

- Oceanus est pater omnium flūminum.
- Omnis terra est parva insula, quam Oceanus omnino circumfluit.—*Cic.* *which*
- Maritimae civitatēs Oceanum attingunt.  
*touch upon*
- Nostrum mare est mediterrāneum.
- Mare suā nātūrā tranquillum est.
- Vis ventōrum mare agitat.
- Mare est profundum et immēsum.—*Cic.*
- Jūpiter mare caelō miscet.—*Prov.*  
*mingles*
- Vir in mare fundit aquās.—*Prov.*  
*pours*
- Ventī volvunt mare; fluctūs ingentēs ad caelum cōnsurgunt.  
*roll up huge*
- Nautae audācēs circum maria omnia errant.  
*rise*
- Sūdor fluit undique rīvīs.—*Verg.* *wander*
- Nauta in portum nāvigat, et in vadō tūtus ā tempestāte est.  
*sails*
- Rōma est in flūmine Tiberī et Flōrentia in flūmine Arnō.
- Flūmen semper fluit, mare manet.
- Rusticus exspectat, dum dēfluat amnis.  
*waits flows past*
- Graecia portūs multōs et bonōs habet.
- Italia portūs paucissimōs in Hadriaticō mari habet.
- Leviore est piscis, quī in altō, quam piscis, quī vivit in vadō.—*Cels.* *than*  
*which*
- Ostiam urbem ad exitum Tiberis in mare fluentis Ancus Marcius rex condidisse fertur.  
*is said to have founded*

## VOCABULARIES—WATER

### III

**unda, ae, F. a wave**

**fuctus, ūs, M.** *a billow*

**gorges, itis, M. a whirlpool**

aestus, ūs, M. *the tide*, { the wild flashing of fire,  
the surging of the sea

**aestuārium, ii, N.** *a lagoon*

**stagnum, i, N.** *a pool, a pond*

**litus, oris, N. the sea-shore, (beach, strand)**

**ōra. ae. F.** *the coast* (of the sea)

**ripa, ae.** F. *the bank* (of a river)

### III

**fōns, fontis, M. a spring**

lymp<sup>h</sup>a, æ, F. *clear spring-water*

**puteus, i, M.** *a well.*

**cisterna**, ae, F. *a cistern*

**aquārius, iī, M.** *a water-carrier*

**aquârium, ii, N.** *a watering-place* (for cattle)

**aqueductus, ūs, M.** *an aqueduct*

**cloāca, ae, F. a sewer**

**canālis, is, M.** *a water-pipe, (canna, a reed)*

**balneae, ārum, F. Gr. *the baths***

**thermae, ārum, F. Gr. warm baths**

## Sentences

▲

1. Mare plēnum undārum est.
2. Faciunt justōs ignis et unda virōs.—*Ōv.*  
make legal husbands
3. Nāvis fluctibus in mediis jactātur.  
is tossed
4. Aenēas omnia circum litora jactātur.—*Verg.*
5. Procella fluctūs ad sidera tollit.—*Verg.*  
raises
6. Gurgēs maximis nāvibus est nōn periculōsus.
7. Aestus maris accēdit et recēdit, sed causa  
ebbs flows  
in sōle lūnāque est.—†*Plin.*
8. Aestūs accessus et recessus lūnae mōtū  
ebb flow  
gubernantur.—†*Cic.*  
are governed
9. Aestuāria sunt loca, ubi mare accēdit et  
recēdit.
10. Lītus est, quo-usque maximus fluctus ā  
how far  
mari pervenit.  
reaches
11. Lītus ā ripā differt; ōra maris est; unda  
lītus tundit.  
beats
12. Rōmulus Rōmam urbem in ripā Tiberis  
posuit.  
placed
13. Maritima ōra Graeciae asperissima est.
14. Furit aestus harēnis.—*Verg.*
15. Ostia est portus Rōmae.

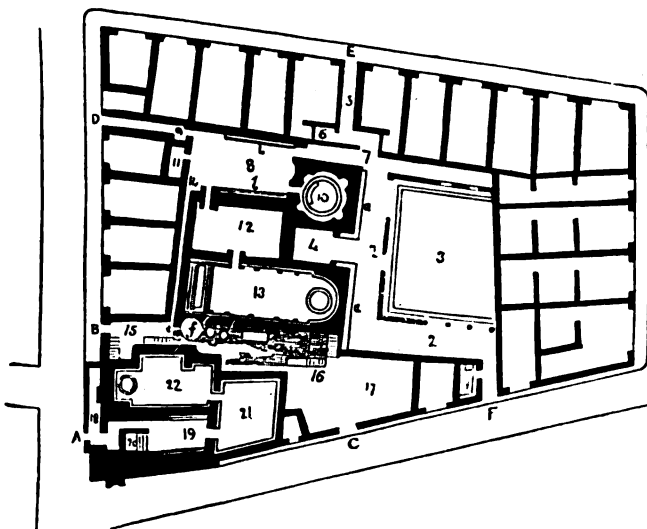
**B**

1. Fōns est aqua viva sē fundēns ē terrā.  
*itself*
2. Est fōns aquae dulcis, cui nōmen Arethūsa  
est. – †Cic. *to which*
3. Multi fontēs ūnum amnem faciunt.
4. Nilus fontium cēlat originem. – †Varr. *make*
5. Philosophōrum fōns ipse Sōcrates est. –  
Quint. *conceals*
6. Puteus perpetuās aquās ex terrae vēnīs  
mānantēs habet, nōn tamen fontium  
mōre effluentēs, cisterna aquam pluviā  
collectā habet. *flowing forth*
7. Rōma cōpiam aquae pūrae recentioribus  
temporibus habuit.
8. Aquaeductūs quattuordecim aquam ad  
urbem apportāverunt. *conveyed*
9. Aquaeductus longissimus sūprā milia  
passuum sexāgintā fuit.
10. Arcūs, caementis exstructi, maximī in  
altitūdinem pedum novem et centum,  
canālēs sustinuērunt. *erected*
11. Arcūs per montēs et trāns vallēs vērunt.
12. Cloāca Maxima, structa ex caementis ā  
Tarquiniō Priscō, in lātītūdinem sēdecim  
pedum et in altitūdinem trīgintā pedum  
erat.
13. Multae cloācae limum viārum Rōmae in  
Tiberim abstulērunt.
14. Graeci Rōmānōs ūsum balneārum et  
thermārum docuērunt. *carried away*  
*taught*

## WATER—THE ROMAN IDEA

### Balneae Pompeianae, The Public Baths at Pompeii

Buried with cinders by an eruption of the volcano Vesuvius in the year 79 A. D.



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>B. } Street Entrances to Furnaces</p> <p>C. }</p> <p>D. }</p> <p>E. } Street Entrances to Baths</p> <p>F. }</p> <p>2. 2. Portico, covered</p> <p>3. Waiting Room</p> <p>a. a. seats, for persons waiting</p> <p>4. Office of <b>Balneātor, ōris</b>, M. the bath-keeper</p> <p>5. }</p> <p>9. } Corridors to Street Entrances</p> <p>7. Passage-way</p> <p>8. { <b>Frigidārium</b>, ii, N. the cooling-room</p> <p>    { <b>Apodytērium</b>, ii, N. Gr. the undressing-room</p> <p>b. b. Seats of Stone</p> <p>10. <b>Baptistērium</b>, or <b>Piscina</b>, the pool, (cold water)</p> <p>11. <b>Tōnstrīna</b>, ae, F. the barber's shop</p> <p>12. { <b>Tepidārium</b>, ii, N. the warm bath</p> <p>    { <b>Apodytērium</b>, ii, N. the undressing room</p> <p>    { <b>Unctōrium</b>, ii, N. the anointing room</p> | <p>13. { <b>Caldārium</b>, ii, N. (square basin), hot bath</p> <p>    { <b>Sūdātōrium</b>, ii, N. (space between), sweating-place</p> <p>    { <b>Lacōnicum</b>, i, N. (circular), vapor bath</p> <p>14. 15. 16. Passage-ways to the <b>Praefurnium</b></p> <p>e. <b>praefurnium</b>, ii, N. the furnace-door</p> <p>f. <b>fornācātōrēs</b>, M. (the 3 Copper) water-heaters</p> <p>17. Court for Servants of the Baths</p> <hr style="width: 20%; margin: 10px auto;"/> <p>A. Street Entrance for Women</p> <p>18. Vestibule to Women's Baths</p> <p>19. <b>Apodytērium</b></p> <p>20. <b>Baptistērium</b></p> <p>21. <b>Tepidārium</b></p> <p>22. { <b>Caldārium</b></p> <p>    { <b>Lacōnicum</b></p> <p><b>balneātor, ōris</b>, M. the bath-keeper</p> <p><b>quadrāns, antis</b>, M. the bather's fee (less than a quarter of a cent)</p> <p><b>strigilis, is</b>, F. a scraper, (horn or metal)</p> <p><b>oleum, i</b>, N. oil, (of olives)</p> <p><b>unguentum, i</b>, N. ointment</p> |
|--|--|

## WATER—THE ROMAN IDEA

Seneca tells us that the ancient Romans washed their arms and legs daily, and took a bath once a week or every market-day. With the rapid advance of civilization, in that warm climate daily bathing became a necessity. The copious floods of the great aqueducts provided this daily luxury to even the meanest citizen.

The price of a bath was a **Quadrāns**, less than a fourth of an American cent. There were built, it is said, 800 public baths in Rome for a population in Cicero's time approaching 400,000 citizens. When public baths first came, it was for the lower orders only, but later the wealthy and even the emperors bathed there also. Most great Romans, however, had in their splendid homes a bath-room or a set of baths with the *three* principal rooms, the dressing-room, the tepid bath, and the hot-air chamber.

The **Lacōnicum**, the vapor-bath, was brought from Sparta. The Spartans, believing warm water weakening for warriors, used only the daily river bath, and a dry sweat in a small closet over a stove.

The ground-plan of the Baths at Pompeii, excavated in 1825, shows an **Insula** nearly surrounded on three sides by shops opening to the street, with the baths inside.

Imagine a bather, his day's work done, about 3 o'clock, entering at F, leaving his slaves, not needed within, to sit under the Portico 2, 2, on the *benches* a, a, and his attending friends, to enjoy the *waiting-room* 3, or to read the advertisements on the walls in the *Office* 4. Having paid his **Quadrāns** to the **Balneātor**, he goes through the *passage-way* 7, into the **Frigidārium** 8, a handsomely decorated room with a single glass window in the arched roof. Having undressed, and hung up his clothing on the pegs around, he descends into the **Piscina** 10, a white marble pool nearly 13 ft. in diameter and 3 ft. deep. Sitting down on the marble step under the cold water he scrubs vigorously. If satisfied, he now returns home. If he does not like cold water, he goes straight into the **Tepidārium** 12, and hangs up his clothes there. The warm air prepares his body for the great heats coming.

Passing through a heavy self-closing door he enters the hot-room 13. In the centre of this room, in the **sūdātōrium**, he begins to exercise violently, moving his limbs and lifting heavy weights to promote profuse perspiration; then with heated blood he enters the *hot dry air* of the **Lacōnicum**, a circular closet heated by a honey-comb of hot flues under the floor, and ventilated by a round hole in the top opened or closed at times with a bell-shaped shield drawn up or down by a chain. Lastly he may step up into the square marble basin of the **Caldārium**, and, sitting down on the marble steps under the hot water, may finish his task; a slave with bone, horn or metal **strigilis**, assisting, and as he returns to the **Tepidārium** drying him off with sponge or towel, and finally anointing him with oil or perfumed ointment. He dresses, cools off in the **Frigidārium**, rejoins his waiting attendants and goes at once to dinner, **cēna**, the chief meal of the day, eaten at unmolested ease while evening steals the hours away.

The first Romans, like all people of ancient times, carried water from the river, from native springs, or drew from the public well. Stones from an old *well-curb*, **puteal**, now in the British Museum, show marks of the ropes of the **aquārii**, *water-carriers*. Cicero praises Rome, "*locum fontibus abundantem*," and we are able yet to reckon that 23 springs flowed from the Seven Hills.

During nearly 500 years such was the cumbersome water-supply of the great City. But in

## WATER—THE ROMAN IDEA

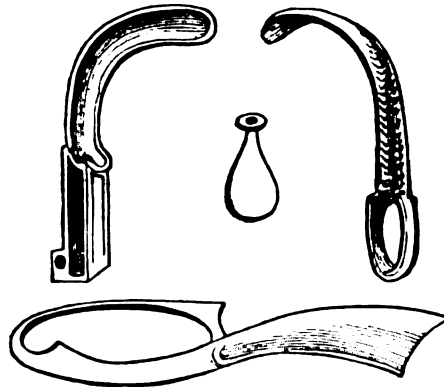
the year 312 B. C. Appius Claudius, builder of the famous old Appian Way, began the first great Aqueduct, and after the time of the Christian era no city ever enjoyed a more lavish water-supply.

Fourteen monstrous aqueducts brought down the sylvan streams of the Apennines, mostly cold and clear. The volume of water was immense; indeed, it is said more water came down to the city through the great aqueducts than flowed past it in the river Tiber. The longest aqueduct was over 61 miles, mostly underground; it was carried through mountains, and over plains and valleys on arches of stone or brick, tier upon tier. The highest aqueduct measured about 109 feet. To construct such public works was the labor of thousands of slaves, through long years of toil. Some still supply water to the modern city of Rome. At the Mountain end was usually a large basin for clarification, and at the City end others for storage.

All the water of the first aqueducts was applied to public purposes only; the citizens being forbidden to touch any but the leakage from accidental flaws in the great water ducts. But the **Aquarii**, *water-officers*, selling this on their own account, were continually tempted to make the leak-holes larger to fill oftener the jars of their customers. Necessity soon compelled the city to allow citizens the right of inserting each to his own house his own branch pipe of lead. Then so many punctures of the great mains permitted waste, and therefore, finally, club-reservoirs over the city were built, each one to feed the nearby homes—247 of these club-basins have been counted.

The surplus water of the great aqueducts supplied the many public city fountains, built to beautify the city, the same escaping finally into the big sewers below.

These costly sewers of enormous size, which the Romans themselves admired most of all their public works, quickly drained away all polluted waters into the Tiber.



STRIGILES

## VOCABULARY—AIR

**āēr, āeris, M. Gr. the air**

**aura, ae, F. Gr. a breeze**

**ventus, i, M. wind**

**spiritus, ūs, M. breath**

**turbō, inis, M. a whirlwind, hurricane, tornado**

**flābra, ōrum, N. blasts (of wind)**

**nūbēs, nūbis, F. a cloud**

**nimbus, i, M. a black rain-cloud**

**nebula, ae, F. fog**

**vapor, ōris, M. steam**

**fumus, i, M. smoke**

The Ancients knew very little about Air. They believed fog, steam, smoke and cloud to be only kinds of air. That was plain because they were *light* and had motion *up*. By the simple process of *thinning*, water turned first into steam, a kind of air, and second into fire. Again, by the process of *thickening*, fire changed first to smoke, a kind of air, second to water, and third to ice or crystal, forms of earth. These processes going on forever made all things. They were called Rarefaction and Condensation.

### Sentences

#### A

1. Aēr significat elementum illud, quod <sup>that</sup> <sup>which</sup> spatium complet inter caelum et terram.  
*fills up*
2. Terra, sita in mediā parte mundi, circum-  
<sup>situated</sup> fūsa undique est hāc animābili, <sup>surrounded</sup> spirābili  
<sup>on every side</sup> nātūrā, cui nomen est āēr.—*Cic.*  
*to which*
3. Ex terrā aqua, ex aquā oritur āēr; deinde  
<sup>arises</sup> retrōrsus vicissim ex āere aqua, ex aquā  
terra infirma.—*Cic.*
4. Agitātus āēr auram facit.  
*makes*
5. Et mē nunc omnēs terrent aurae.—*Verg.*  
*me*
6. Ventus est āeris fluēs unda cum incertā  
motūs redundantia.—*Vitr.*  
*redundancy*
7. Vehementior spiritus ventus est, invicem  
<sup>rather forcible</sup> spīritus leviter fluēs āēr.—*Sen.*
8. Ventī ruunt et terrās turbine <sup>blow over</sup> perflant.

#### B

1. Aēr concrētus in nūbēs cōgitur.—*Cic.*  
*is compressed*
2. Atra nūbēs condidit lūnam.—*Hor.*  
*hides*
3. Eripiunt subitō nūbēs caelumque diemque.  
*snatch away*
4. Jūpiter collectās fugat nūbēs sōlemque  
redūcit.—*Verg.*  
*leads back*
5. Nimbus est pluvia repentina et brevior:  
differt ā pluvīā, quae continua est, et lenior.  
*which*
6. Nebula est vapor ā terrā atque aquis  
surgēns.
7. Nebula est rārior, nūbēs est dēnsior.
8. Terrēnus vapor siccus est et fūmō similis,  
qui ventōs, tonitrua et fulmina facit.—*Sen.*
9. Semper flamma fūmō est proxima.—*Prov.*
10. Dē fūmō, ut prōverbium vetus est, ad  
flammam.
11. Multa ā lūnā mānant, et fluunt.—*Cic.*

## VOCABULARY—FIRE

**ignis**, is, M. (abl. *igni*), *fire*  
**incendium**, ii, N. *a fire, a conflagration*  
**flamma**, ae, F. *a flame, a blaze*  
**scintilla**, ae, F. *a spark*  
**carbō**, ōnis, M. *a coal, charcoal*, (live or dead)  
**cinis**, eris, M. *ashes*  
**fūmus**, i, M. *smoke*  
**fūnus**, eris, N. *a funeral*, (the burning of a body, which was done at night)  
**fūligō**, inis, F. *soot*  
**calor**, ōris, M. *heat*  
**lux**, lūcis, F. *the light*  
**lūmen**, inis, N. *light*, (a source of light)  
**umbra**, ae, F. *a shade, a shadow*, (a departed spirit)

**Vesta**, ae, F. *Vesta*, (Goddess of Fire)  
**Vestālēs virginēs**, *Vestal virgins*  
**flāmen**, inis, M. *a priest*, (who blows the flame, or who burns the offering)  
**āra**, ārae, F. *an altar*  
**altāria**, ium, N. *a high altar*  
**fax**, facis, F. *a torch*, (originally a pine-knot)  
**candēla**, ae, F. *a candle*, (wax or tallow)  
**candēlābrum**, i, N. *a chandelier, a candlestick*  
**lanterna**, ae, F. *a lantern* (of horn)  
**lucerna**, ae, F. *a lamp* (for oil)  
**focus**, i, M. *a fire-place*, (a hearth)  
**foculus**, i, M. *a brazier*, (a fire-pan)  
**furnus**, i, M. *an oven*

A kitchen range with food and utensils was uncovered at Pompeii; also a bake-shop, with mill and oven, and loaves of bread therein charred to cinder.

Cities in olden times were not lighted at all as ours. Every traveler by night had to carry his own torch or lantern, or be lighted by his slave through the dingy narrow streets and lanes.

Heating the water for the great public baths was a heavy task. No big coal mines supplied coal for a constant fire. To save fuel fresh fires had to be made daily. Charcoal or wood or straw was fed to the **furnus**, the flaming oven, under the three copper boilers. When the water in the lowest was hot, a bell summoned the bathers. Feeding the fires through years impaired the eyesight of the slaves on duty.

### Sentences

#### A

1. Ignis est ūnum ē quattuor elementis; calōrem ac lūmen habet.
2. Ignis hominibus ūtilissimus est.
3. Fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur.  
were seen
4. Lux incendiī pulcherrima erat.
5. Incendiī fūmus āterrimus erat.
6. Servus carbōnēs in ignem in foculō pōnit.  
puts
7. Dicuntur etiam carbōnēs minūtae scintillae ex lignis ardentibus saepe exsiliētēs.  
are called      burning      leaping out
8. Vigilēs incendiī flammās exstinguunt.
9. Fūmus est vapor niger ex igni.
10. Pueri ōs oblitum fūligine erat.  
besmeared
11. Calor sōlis senī hieme est grātus.
12. Carbōnēs vivī cinerem inanimum celeriter faciunt.
13. Aurōra novō spargēbat lūmine terrās.—*Verg.*  
was sprinkling
14. Fūnera Rōmae noctū cum facibus celebrantur.  
are celebrated
15. Cadāvera noctū Rōmānī igni cremāvērunt.  
dead bodies      burned

#### B

1. Vestae templum antiquissimum erat.
2. Vestālēs virginēs sex ignem sacrum in āra templi Vestae cūrāvērunt; quaeque trigintā annōs in officiō fuit.  
each
3. Fax est simplicissimum lūminum.
4. Sōl est splendidissimum lūminum.
5. Cinis candēlae levissimus est.
6. Lucerna scribae nēquam erat.
7. Dē lignis carbōnēs coquunt.—*Cato.*  
they char
8. Arbor viridis est minus ūtilis carbōni.—*Plin.*
9. Māter coquit pinguissimam gallinam carbōne.—*Plin.*
10. Pater ligna super focō largē repōnit.  
replaces
11. Sacrum vetustis exstruit lignis focum.—*Hor.*  
old      heaps high
12. Ara differt ab altāribus, illa humilior est.  
the former
13. Foculus erat parvus focus.
14. Pater āram Jovī cōsecrat.  
consecrates
15. Flāmen tūra āris fūmōsis dat.  
gives



## FIRE—THE ROMAN IDEA

All the world well knows the ancient maxim, "Fire is a very good servant, but a very bad master." In the year 390 B. C. the Gauls, the giant warriors "with fair hair and flashing eyes," sweeping south from the river Po spread panic over Italy. All fled before that terrific horde, or fell beneath their heavy swords. They entered the empty city. They sacked and burned the deserted homes. Only the *arx* with its few valiant defenders remained. The whole city of wooden houses with straw-thatched roofs became ashes.

Again, in Nero's reign, in the year 64 A. D., a second fire of 8 days destroyed 10 of the 14 wards.

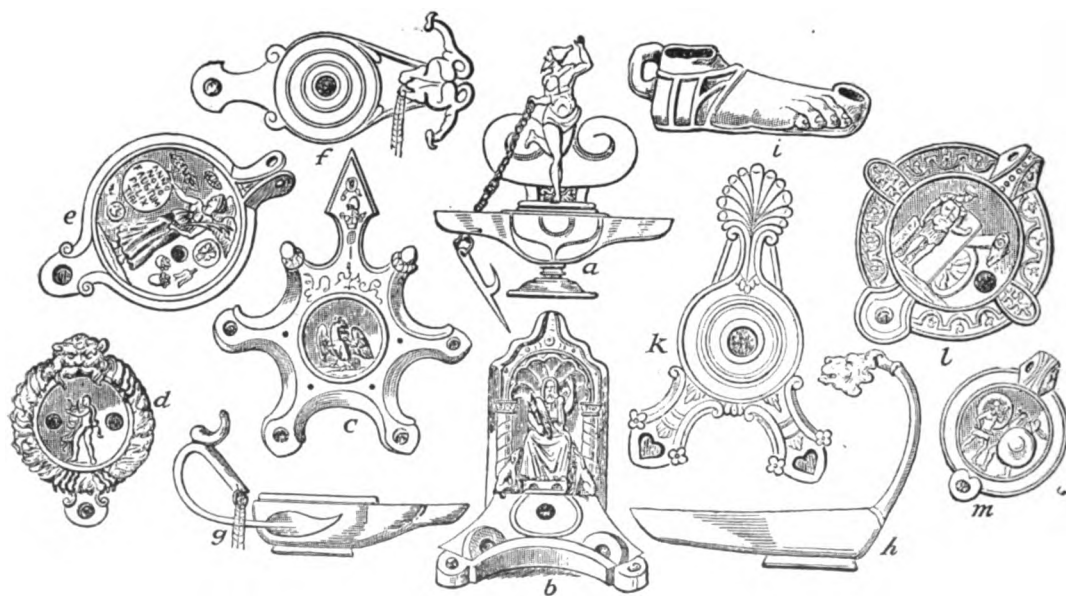
The chief loss of the *first* great fire was the priceless records of the earliest history of Ancient Rome, of the *second* was the sacred temples of the Seven Kings.

To rebuild the houses of wood a third time was impossible. The best timber of the Apennines was gone. No railroads were waiting to carry more from far countries. But Nero, proudly styling himself an artist, rebuilt magnificently, with broader, straighter streets, and walls of brick or stone.

There were no means of extinguishing fire in those days, no rods of rubber hose, no tall fire-ladders. Once only do we read of the *fire-engine*, *siphon*, a *squirt*. Precautions must provide protection. Precautions taken therefore were the *Vigilēs*, *watchmen*, patrolling and changing at each *Vigilia*, three-hour night-watch; the *insulae*, *isolated apartment-houses* four feet apart by law; the use of the Gabian or fire-proof stone, and burnt bricks of all shapes; the substitution of *pavimenta*, *pavements* and mosaics for boarded floors; also of the *camerae*, *arched ceilings* of plaster or cement; lastly the restriction of height to 70 feet. But herein also lurked a new and most dreadful peril. There were no long iron rods, or cross beams of iron to tie together these tall house-walls; and frequent earthquakes were liable to spread them; when all the interior floors of seven stories were prone to *collapse*, peril was still prevalent. Therefore the wealthy Roman aimed to build his mansion one story high.

The first men had no matches. Fresh fire had to be started in one of three ways: by long rubbing two sticks together, by striking sparks from two flints, and later with the burning glass. The task was not easy, often requiring hours of persistent effort. Naturally, they tried to save the fire. Hence the early Romans founded the temple of Vesta, where the sacred fire, lighted anew from the sun once a year, on New Year's Day, March the 1st, and tended by the six holy virgins, was kept always burning. The temple of Vesta stood near the public water-well; hence at one journey fire and water could be carried to any home at any time. Other ancient cities preserved the sacred fire for the same reason. The fire on the hearth and altar, in the home, in the temple, in the town hall, was the source of light and heat, and the centre of gossip and of worship.

Those ancient Romans had no knowledge of chimneys. The hole in the peak of their pointed straw-thatched huts, *culmina*, emitted the smoke. Later all houses, palaces, and temples were built with a large square hole in the roof, *impluvium*, at once to emit the smoke and to admit the daylight. Oil lamps also had no chimneys. Hence the *ātrium*, their chief *living room*, was *dark* (*āter*); walls, and ceilings, and white marble statuary,—everything was smoked and blackened; their eyes, their breathing were distressed. *Fūmōsus December* was sportively styled the *saddest* time of year. To lessen smoke the wood was made very dry, and sometimes smeared with scum of olive oil. If the day was cool a *brazier*, *foculus*, of glowing charcoal was carried into the middle of the room, as travelers still find the custom.

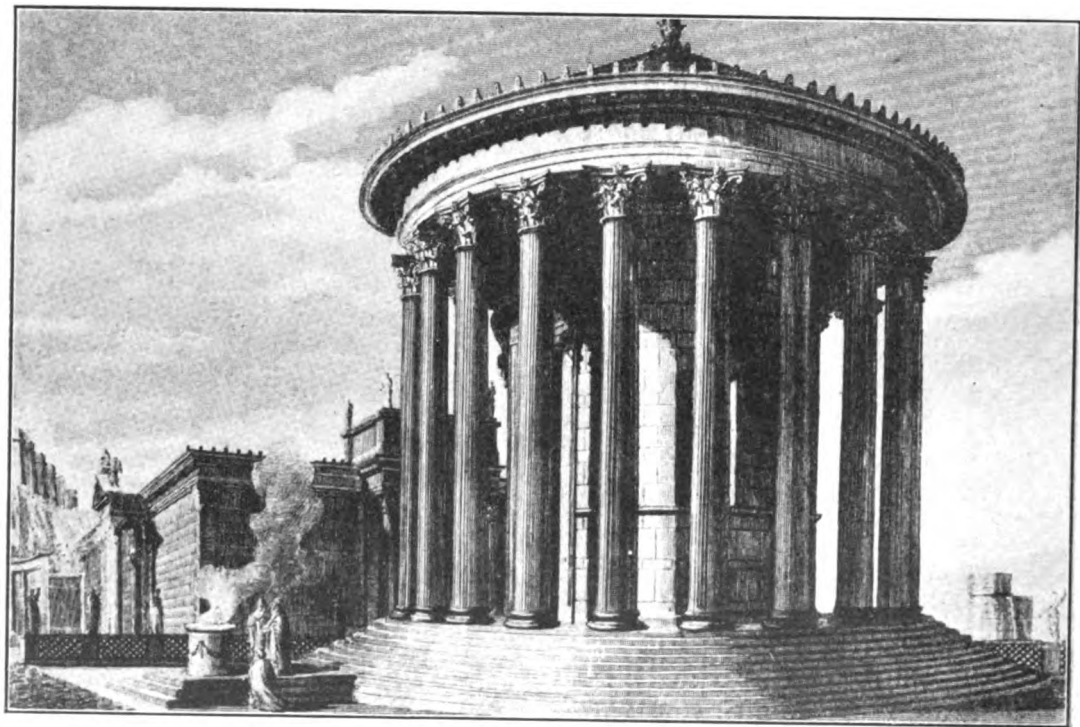


LUCERNAE ROMANAE

---

## PRONOUNS

---



TEMPLUM VESTAE

## PRONOUNS

A Pronoun is a word *that stands for a Noun*.

NOTE.—The Noun for which it stands is called its Antecedent.

### The Two Properties of the Pronoun

1st. It must *stand for a Noun*.

2d. { It may serve as a Noun, or  
It may serve as an Adjective.

### Two Rules of Agreement

**Rule 1.**—A Pronoun, serving as a Noun, agrees with its Antecedent in Person, Number, and Gender, but its Case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands.

**Rule 2.**—A Pronoun, serving as an Adjective, agrees with its Noun in Gender, Number, and Case, but cannot always in Declension.

### The Eight Kinds of Pronouns

Personal, Demonstrative, Determinative, of Identity, Intensive, Relative, Interrogative, Indefinite.

#### The Personal Pronouns

<b>ego, I:</b>	Pers. Pron. 1st Pers.	} (Substantive, used as a Noun)
<b>tū, { thou           { you }</b>	Pers. Pron. 2d Pers.	
<b>sui, of himself:</b>	Pers. Pron. 3d Pers.	
<b>meus, my noster, our</b>	Pers. Pron. 1st Pers.	} (Possessive, used as an Adjective)
<b>tuus, thy vester, your</b>	Pers. Pron. 2d Pers.	
<b>suus, his:</b>	Pers. Pron. 3d Pers.	
<b>is, he; ea, she; id, it:</b>	Pers. Pron. 3d Pers.	

### The Demonstrative Pronouns

**hic, haec, hoc, this:** Dem. Pron. 1st Pers.  
**iste, ista, istud, that:** Dem. Pron. 2d Pers.  
**ille, illa, illud, that:** Dem. Pron. 3d Pers.

### The Determinative Pronoun

**is, ea, id, that**

### The Pronoun of Identity

**idem, eadem, idem, same**

### The Intensive Pronoun

**ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self**

### The Relative

**qui, quae, quod, who, which**

### The Interrogative

**quis? quae? quid? who? what?** (Substantive)  
**qui (—)? quae (—)? quod (—)? which (—)?**  
**what (—)?** (Adjective)

### The Indefinite Pronouns

The Indefinite Pronouns are numerous. They are formed by various combinations of Pronouns and Pronoun Adjectives.

They are used in place of Nouns to designate whatever is indefinite or uncertain.

#### Rules of Order

I. *Demonstrative, Determinative, Relative, and Interrogative Pronouns, also the Pronoun of Identity normally precede their Nouns.*

II. *The Intensive and Indefinite Pronouns, also Possessive and Reflexive forms normally follow their Nouns.*

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST PERSON

### Substantive Sense

*ego, I*

Sing.	
Nom.	<b>ego, I</b>
Gen.	<b>mei, of me</b>
Dat.	<b>mihi, to, for me</b>
Acc.	<b>mē, me</b>
Voc.	wanting
Abl.	<b>mē, by, with, from me</b>

### Possessive Sense

*meus, mea, meum, my, mine*

Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<b>meus</b>	<b>mea</b>	<b>meum</b>	<b>mei</b>	<b>meae</b>	<b>mea</b>
Gen.	<b>mei</b>	<b>meae</b>	<b>mei</b>	<b>meōrum</b>	<b>meārum</b>	<b>meōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>meō</b>	<b>meae</b>	<b>meō</b>	<b>meis</b>	<b>meis</b>	<b>meis</b>
Acc.	<b>meum</b>	<b>meam</b>	<b>meum</b>	<b>meōs</b>	<b>meās</b>	<b>mea</b>
Voc.	<b>mī</b>	<b>mea</b>	<b>meum</b>	<b>mei</b>	<b>meae</b>	<b>mea</b>
Abl.	<b>meō</b>	<b>meā</b>	<b>meō</b>	<b>meis</b>	<b>meis</b>	<b>meis</b>

*noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours*

Plur.		Sing.			Plur.		
		M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N,
Nom.	nōs, we	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
Gen.	nostrum, nostrī, of us	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
Dat.	nōbis, to, for us	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostris	nostris	nostris
Acc.	nōs, us	nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
Voc.	wanting	noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
Abl.	nōbis, by, with, from us	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostris	nostris	nostris

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE SECOND PERSON

### Substantive Sense

*tū, thou or you*

Sing.	
Nom.	<b>tū, thou</b>
Gen.	<b>tuī, of thee</b>
Dat.	<b>tibi, to, for thee</b>
Acc.	<b>tē, thee</b>
Voc.	<b>tū, O thou</b>
Abl.	<b>tē, by, with, from thee</b>

### Possessive Sense

*tuus, tua, tuum, thy, thine*

Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<b>tuus</b>	<b>tua</b>	<b>tuum</b>	<b>tuī</b>	<b>tuae</b>	<b>tua</b>
Gen.	<b>tuī</b>	<b>tuae</b>	<b>tuī</b>	<b>tuōrum</b>	<b>tuārum</b>	<b>tuōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>tuō</b>	<b>tuae</b>	<b>tuō</b>	<b>tuis</b>	<b>tuis</b>	<b>tuis</b>
Acc.	<b>tuum</b>	<b>tuam</b>	<b>tuum</b>	<b>tuōs</b>	<b>tuās</b>	<b>tua</b>
Voc.	(Vocative wanting)			(Vocative wanting)		
Abl.	<b>tuō</b>	<b>tuā</b>	<b>tuō</b>	<b>tuis</b>	<b>tuis</b>	<b>tuis</b>

*vester, vestra, vestrum, your, yours*

Plur.		Sing.			Plur.		
		M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<b>vōs, you, ye</b>	<b>vester</b>	<b>vestra</b>	<b>vestrum</b>	<b>vestrī</b>	<b>vestrae</b>	<b>vestra</b>
Gen.	<b>vestrum, vestrī, of you</b>	<b>vestrī</b>	<b>vestrae</b>	<b>vestrī</b>	<b>vestrōrum</b>	<b>vestrārum</b>	<b>vestrōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>vōbis, to, for you</b>	<b>vestrō</b>	<b>vestrae</b>	<b>vestrō</b>	<b>vestris</b>	<b>vestris</b>	<b>vestris</b>
Acc.	<b>vōs, you</b>	<b>vestrum</b>	<b>vestram</b>	<b>vestrum</b>	<b>vestrōs</b>	<b>vestrōs</b>	<b>vestra</b>
Voc.	<b>vōs, O ye</b>	(Vocative wanting)			(Vocative wanting)		
Abl.	<b>vōbis, by, with, from you</b>	<b>vestrō</b>	<b>vestrā</b>	<b>vestrō</b>	<b>vestris</b>	<b>vestris</b>	<b>vestris</b>

# PERSONAL PRONOUNS OF THE THIRD PERSON

## DETERMINATIVE USE

### Substantive Sense

Sing.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<i>is, he</i>	<i>ea, she</i>	<i>id, it</i>
Gen.	<i>ejus, of him</i>	<i>ejus, of her</i>	<i>ejus, of it</i>
Dat.	<i>ei, to, for him</i>	<i>ei, to, for her</i>	<i>ei, to, for it</i>
Acc.	<i>eum, him</i>	<i>eam, her</i>	<i>id, it</i>
	(Vocative wanting)		
Abl.	<i>eō, by, with, from him</i>	<i>eā, by, with, from her</i>	<i>eō, by, with, from it</i>
Plur.			
Nom.	<i>ei, ii, i, they</i>	<i>ea, they</i>	<i>ea, they</i>
Gen.	<i>eōrum, of them</i>	<i>eārum, of them</i>	<i>eōrum, of them</i>
Dat.	<i>eis, iis, is, to, for them</i>	<i>eis, iis, is, to, for them</i>	<i>eis, iis, is, to, for them</i>
Acc.	<i>eōs, them</i>	<i>eās, them</i>	<i>ea, them</i>
	(Vocative wanting)		
Abl.	<i>eis, iis, is, by, with, from them</i>	<i>eis, iis, is, by, with, from them</i>	<i>eis, iis, is, by, with, from them</i>

### Possessive Sense

M.	F.	N.
<i>ejus</i> { <i>his</i> (—) <i>his</i>	<i>ejus</i> { <i>her</i> (—) <i>hers</i>	<i>ejus, its</i> (—)

NOTE.—*ejus, his* (—), etc., borrowed from the Genitive Singular of the Determinative Pronoun (see page 100).

<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
{ <i>their</i> (—) <i>theirs</i>	{ <i>their</i> (—) <i>theirs</i>	{ <i>their</i> (—) <i>theirs</i>

NOTE.—*eōrum, theirs* (—), etc., borrowed from the Genitive Plural of the Determinative Pronoun (see page 100).

## REFLEXIVE USE

### Substantive Sense

Sing.	(Nominative wanting)
Gen.	<i>sui, of himself, herself, itself</i>
Dat.	<i>sibi, to, for himself, herself, itself</i>
Acc.	<i>sē or sēsē, himself, herself, itself</i>
	(Vocative wanting)
Abl.	<i>sē or sēsē, by, with, from himself, herself, itself</i>
Plur.	(Nominative wanting)
Gen.	<i>sui, of themselves</i>
Dat.	<i>sibi, to, for themselves</i>
Acc.	<i>sē or sēsē, themselves</i>
	(Vocative wanting)
Abl.	<i>sē or sēsē, by, with, from themselves</i>

### Possessive Sense

M.	F.	N.
<i>suus</i> { <i>his own</i> <i>his</i>	<i>sua</i> { <i>her own</i> <i>her, hers</i>	<i>suum</i> { <i>its own</i> <i>its</i>

NOTE.—*suus, sua, suum, his own, his*, etc., is declined in full, Singular and Plural, like *bonus, bona, bonum*, (Vocatives wanting.)

<i>suus</i>	<i>sua</i>	<i>suum</i>
{ <i>their own</i> <i>their, theirs</i>	{ <i>their own</i> <i>their, theirs</i>	{ <i>their own</i> <i>their, theirs</i>

NOTE.—*suus, sua, suum, their own, their, theirs*, is declined in full, Singular and Plural, like *bonus, bona, bonum*, (Vocatives wanting.)

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN OF THE FIRST PERSON

*hic, haec, hoc, this (near MYSELF)*

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom. hic,</i> <i>this* (man)</i>	<i>haec,</i> <i>this† (woman)</i>	<i>hoc,</i> <i>this‡ (thing)</i>	<i>hī,</i> <i>these (men)</i>	<i>hae,</i> <i>these (women)</i>	<i>haec,</i> <i>these (things)</i>
<i>Gen. hūjus</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hūjus</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat. huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
<i>Acc. hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
	(Vocative wanting)			(Vocative wanting)	
<i>Abl. hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN OF THE SECOND PERSON

*iste, ista, istud, that (near THYSELF, OF YOURS)*

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom. iste,</i> <i>that (man)</i>	<i>ista,</i> <i>that (woman)</i>	<i>istud,</i> <i>that (thing)</i>	<i>istī,</i> <i>those (men)</i>	<i>istae,</i> <i>those (women)</i>	<i>ista,</i> <i>those (things)</i>
<i>Gen. istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>
<i>Dat. isti</i>	<i>isti</i>	<i>isti</i>	<i>istis</i>	<i>istis</i>	<i>istis</i>
<i>Acc. istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>
	(Vocative wanting)			(Vocative wanting)	
<i>Abl. istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istis</i>	<i>istis</i>	<i>istis</i>

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON

*ille, illa, illud, that (near HIM, HER, IT = yonder)*

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom. ille,</i> <i>that (man)</i>	<i>illa,</i> <i>that (woman)</i>	<i>illud,</i> <i>that (thing)</i>	<i>illī,</i> <i>those (men)</i>	<i>illae,</i> <i>those (women)</i>	<i>illa,</i> <i>those (things)</i>
<i>Gen. illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat. illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Acc. illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
	(Vocative wanting)			(Vocative wanting)	
<i>Abl. illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

\* Man, or other Masculine Noun.

† Woman, or other Feminine Noun.

‡ Thing, or other Neuter Noun.

NOTE—*Iste* frequently implies contempt, shown in conversation by voice or eye, but in translation it requires a parenthetical word, thus, *isti gladiatorī, to that (horrid) gladiator.*



## THE DECLENSION OF THE ANTECEDENT

N. M. 3

Sing.		
N. <b>Victor</b>		<i>a conqueror</i>
G. <b>ōris,</b>		<i>of a</i>
D. <b>ōrī,</b>		<i>to, for</i>
Ac. <b>ōrem,</b>		<i>a (....)</i>
V. <b>or</b>		<i>Oh</i>
Ab. <b>ōre,</b>		<i>by, with, from</i>

Plur.		
N. <b>Victōrēs,</b>		<i>conquerors</i>
G. <b>ōrum,</b>		<i>of</i>
D. <b>ōribus,</b>		<i>to, for</i>
Ac. <b>ōrēs,</b>		<i>(....)s</i>
V. <b>ōrēs,</b>		<i>Oh</i>
Ab. <b>ōribus,</b>		<i>by, with, from</i>

N. F. 3

**Victrix = a conqueress**

Sing.		
N. <b>Victricis</b>		
G. <b>icis,</b>		<i>of a</i>
D. <b>icī,</b>		<i>to, for</i>
Ac. <b>icem,</b>		<i>a (....)</i>
V. <b>cs,</b>		<i>Oh</i>
Ab. <b>ice,</b>		<i>by, with, from</i>

Plur.		
N. <b>Victricēs,</b>		<i>conqueresses</i>
G. <b>icium,</b>		<i>of</i>
D. <b>icibus,</b>		<i>to, for</i>
Ac. <b>icēs,</b>		<i>(....)cs</i>
V. <b>icēs,</b>		<i>Oh</i>
Ab. <b>icibus,</b>		<i>by, with, from</i>

### Exercises

**A**

1. Mihi, mē, nōbīs, nōs
2. Tibi, tē, vōbīs, vōs
3. Meī, tuī, nostrum, vestrum
4. Suī, sē, sibi, sēsē
5. Sic sē rēs habet.—*Cic.*

**B**

1. I, me, thee, she, he, her, him
2. Of me, by me, for me, with me
3. Of thee, by thee, to thee, from thee
4. We, us, for us, of us, by us
5. You, ye, to you, of you, with you

**Rule of Order.**—*Possessives normally follow the Nouns they qualify.*

**C**

1. Pater noster. Māter mea.
2. Pater tuus. Frāter meus.
3. Frātris meī. Sorōri meae.
4. Patrum nostrōrum. Sorōribus nostrīs.
5. Sorōrum vestrārū. Frātribus vestrīs.

**D**

1. Our mother. Your father.
2. My father. Thy mother.
3. Of my brother. To thy sister.
4. For our mothers. By our fathers.
5. Your brothers. Our sisters.

**Rule of Order.**—*Possessives emphatic precede the Nouns they qualify.*

**E**

1. Mea domus. Meus equus.
2. Cōsul suam domum laudat, virgō etiam ejus domum laudat.
3. Suī parentēs. Suae rēs. Sua bona.
4. Suārū domuum. Suā spē.

**F**

1. Cato has his own house.
2. Cato has his own horse.
3. Cato praises his own horse, and Galba also praises his horse.
4. By their own hands. In their steps.

# VOCABULARY—EVERY-DAY OCCUPATIONS

(Endings *tor, trix*)

Notice how few the number of useful occupations

<b>negōtium</b> , <i>ii</i> , N. <i>business</i>	<b>nūtrix</b> , <i>icis</i> , F. <i>a nurse</i>
<b>negōtiātor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a banker</i> , (a big business man)	<b>pastor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a shepherd</i>
<b>arātor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a plowman</i>	<b>pistōr</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a baker</i> , (orig. a miller)
<b>agitātor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. { 1. <i>a driver</i> (of horses or cattle) 2. <i>a charioteer, a coachman</i>	<b>pictor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a painter</i>
<b>conditor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a founder, a builder</i>	<b>scriptor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a scribe, a writer</i>
<b>doctor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a teacher</i>	<b>sculptor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a sculptor</i>
<b>praeceptor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>an instructor</i>	<b>structor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a builder, carver</i>
<b>professor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. { <i>a professor</i> <i>a public teacher of any branch</i>	<b>speculātor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. { <i>a spy</i>
<b>litterātor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a teacher of reading and writing</i>	<b>speculātrix</b> , <i>icis</i> , F. { <i>a spy</i>
<b>gladiātor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a gladiator, a swordsman</i>	<b>explōrātōr</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a scout</i>
<b>gubernātor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a pilot</i>	<b>victor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a conqueror</i>
<b>imperātor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. { <i>a commander-in-chief</i> <i>the Emperor</i>	<b>victrix</b> , <i>icis</i> , F. <i>a conqueress</i>
<b>lector</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a reader</i> , (a slave who reads aloud to his master)	<b>vēnātor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a hunter</i>
<b>mercātor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a merchant</i> , (wholesale)	<b>vēnātrix</b> , <i>icis</i> , F. <i>a huntress</i>
<b>ambulātor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>an idler</i>	<b>vinitor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a vine dresser</i>
<b>sponsor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a bondsman</i>	<b>sūtor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a shoemaker</i>
<b>tūtor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a guardian</i> (of minors, etc.)	<b>tōnsor</b> , <i>ōris</i> , M. <i>a barber</i>

**Rule of Order.**—*Demonstratives normally precede the Nouns they qualify.*

## Nominatives

<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>
1. Hic vir	1. Haec fēmina	1. Hoc animal
2. Hic victor	2. Haec victrix	2. Hoc regnum
3. Iste tōnsor	3. Ista puella	3. Istud bellum
4. Ille arātor	4. Illa virgō	4. Illud templum
<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>F</b>
1. Hi doctōrēs	1. Hae nūtricēs	1. Haec carmina
2. Hi mercātōrēs	2. Hae mātērēs	2. Haec poēmata
3. Isti gladiātōrēs	3. Istae speculātricēs	3. Ista vectigālia
4. Illi pictōrēs	4. Illae sorōrēs	4. Illa marmora
<b>G</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>I</b>
1. This instructor	1. This queen	1. This business
2. That idler	2. That voice	2. That body
3. That pilot	3. Yonder rose	3. Yonder sea
<b>J</b>	<b>K</b>	<b>L</b>
1. These sculptors	1. These islands	1. These works
2. Those scouts	2. Those nights	2. Those rocks
3. Yonder shepherds	3. Those violets	3. Yonder oaks

## THE AGREEMENT WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE

### Genitives

<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>
1. Hūjus victōris	1. Hūjus victricis	1. Hūjus animālis
2. Istius tōnsōris	2. Istius puellae	2. Istius belli
3. Illius arātōris	3. Illius virginis	3. Illius templi
<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>F</b>
1. Hōrum victōrum	1. Hārum victricium	1. Hōrum animālium
2. Istōrum tōnsōrum	2. Istārum puellārum	2. Istōrum bellōrum
3. Illōrum arātōrum	3. Illārum virginum	3. Illōrum templōrum

### Datives

<b>G</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>I</b>
1. Huic doctōrī	1. Huic mātri	1. Huic carmini
2. Istī gladiātōrī	2. Istī speculātrici	2. Istī vectigālī
3. Illi pictōrī	3. Illi sorōrī	3. Illi marmorī
<b>J</b>	<b>K</b>	<b>L</b>
1. His doctōribus	1. His mātribus	1. His carminibus
2. Istis gladiātōribus	2. Istis speculātricibus	2. Istis vectigālibus
3. Illis pictōribus	3. Illis sorōribus	3. Illis marmoribus

### Accusatives

<b>M</b>	<b>N</b>	<b>O</b>
1. Hunc arātōrem	1. Hanc fēminam	1. Hoc metallum
2. Istum ambulātōrem	2. Istam luxuriem	2. Istud genū
3. Illum doctōrem	3. Illam speciem	3. Illud mel
<b>P</b>	<b>Q</b>	<b>R</b>
1. Hōs gubernātōrēs	1. Hās rēs	1. Haec marmora
2. Istōs tōnsōrēs	2. Istās faciēs	2. Ista cornua
3. Illōs mercātōrēs	3. Illās acūs	3. Illa regna

### Ablatives

<b>S</b>	<b>T</b>	<b>U</b>
1. (By) this instructor	1. (With) this conqueress	1. From this seat
2. (By) that baker	2. (With) that nurse	2. From that journey
3. (By) that sculptor	3. (With) yonder huntress	3. From yonder sea
<b>V</b>	<b>W</b>	<b>X</b>
1. (By) these scribes	1. (With) these conqueresses	1. From these bodies
2. (By) those gladiators	2. (With) those spies	2. From those heads
3. (By) yonder shepherds	3. (With) those huntresses	3. From yonder rocks

NOTE.—Ablatives of persons usually require the prepositions *ā*, *ab*, *by*, or *cum*, *with*, but may be used without them.

## THE DETERMINATIVE PRONOUN

is, ea, id, that (the aforesaid)						
Singular			Plural			
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom. is, that * <sub>(man)</sub>	ea, that † <sub>(woman)</sub>	id, that ‡ <sub>(thing)</sub>	eī, ii, i, those (men)	eae, those (women)	ea, those (things)	
Gen. ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	
Dat. eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs, is	eīs, iīs, is	eīs, iīs, is	
Acc. eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea	
	(Vocative wanting)			(Vocative wanting)		
Abl. eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs, is	eīs, iīs, is	eīs, iīs, is	

## THE PRONOUN OF IDENTITY

idem, eadem, idem, same					
Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. idem, the same * <sub>(man)</sub>	eadem, the same † <sub>(woman)</sub>	idem, the same ‡ <sub>(thing)</sub>	eīdem } the idem } same (men)	eaedem, the same (women)	eadem, the same (things)
Gen. ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat. eidem	eidem	eidem	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem
Acc. eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
	(Vocative wanting)			(Vocative wanting)	
Abl. eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem	eīsdem, isdem

## THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self					
Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. ipse, (him) self	ipsa, (her) self	ipsum, (its) self	ipsī, (them) selves	ipsae, (them) selves	ipsa, (them) selves
Gen. ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat. ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Acc. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
	(Vocative wanting)			(Vocative wanting)	
Abl. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

NOTE.—Ipse is often used to intensify another pronoun, as *nōs ipsī*, (*nōs met ipsī*), *we ourselves*; or a noun, as *vir ipse ibit*, *the man will go himself*, used intensively: but *vir sē amābit*, *the man will love himself*, is used reflexively.

\* Man, or other Masculine Noun.

† Woman, or other Feminine Noun.

‡ Thing, or other Neuter Noun.

NOTE, is always refers to something said or thought of before.

## HOW TO PARSE PRONOUNS

Dem. Pr. 1	Intens. Pr.	Reflex. Pr. 3	Reflex. Poss. Pr. 3
N. S. M.	N. S. M.	Ac. S. M.	Ac. S. F.
Hic	vir	ipse	et
		sē	et
		suam	uxōrem laudat.

## VOCABULARY—THE FAMILY

**parēns, entis, C.** *a parent*  
**patria, ae, F.** *one's fatherland* (or native country)  
**pater, tris, M.** *a father*  
**māter, tris, F.** *a mother*  
**frāter, tris, M.** *a brother*  
**soror, ōris, F.** *a sister*  
**uxor, ōris, F.** *a wife*  
**filius, ii, M.** *a son*  
**filia, ae, F.** *a daughter*  
**liberī, ōrum, M. pl.** *the children*

**avus, i, M.** *a grandfather*  
**avia, ae, F.** *a grandmother*  
**nepos, ōtis, M.** *a grandson*  
**neptis, is, F.** *a granddaughter*  
**consōbrinus, i, M.** } *a cousin*  
**consōbrina, ae, F.** } (a brother's or sister's child)  
**alumnus, i, M.** *a foster-son*  
**alumna, ae, F.** *a foster-daughter*  
**pūpillus, i, M.** *an orphan boy* } (a ward, a minor)  
**pūpilla, ae, F.** *an orphan girl* }

**Rules of Order.** { *The Determinative Pronoun precedes its Noun.*  
*The Pronoun of Identity precedes its Noun.*  
*The Intensive normally follows, but emphatically precedes the Noun it qualifies.*

Masc.	Fem. Genitives	Neut.
<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>
1. Pater ejus puerī	1. Māter ejus puellae	1. Domus ejus animālis
2. Frāter ejusdem puerī	2. Soror ejusdem puellae	2. Pēs ejusdem animālis
3. Avus ipse ejus puerī	3. Avia ipsa ejus puellae	3. Caput ipsius animālis
	<b>Datives</b>	
<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>F</b>
1. Est pater eī puerō	1. Est māter eī puellae	1. Eī patri bonō
2. Est frāter eidem puerō	2. Est soror eidem puellae	2. Eidem mātři bonae
3. Eī pūpillō ipsī	3. Eī pūpillae ipsī	3. Eī fidēli uxōri ipsī
	<b>Plurals</b>	
<b>G</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>I</b>
1. Liberī eōrum parentium	1. Liberī eandem aviam habent.	1. Eis liberis
2. Liberī eōrundem parentium.	2. Sunt ejusdem patriae liberī	2. Eisdem liberis
3. Eis liberis ipsis	3. Ea patriam ipsam amat	3. Liberis ipsis
<b>J</b>	<b>K</b>	<b>L</b>
1. The son of that father	1. The daughter of that mother	1. My wife has two brothers
2. The son of the same father	2. The daughter of the same mother	2. Your son has three sisters
3. The grandson himself of that aged man	3. The granddaughter herself of that old woman	3. His grandson has a wife
<b>M</b>	<b>N</b>	<b>O</b>
1. (By) that son	1. (With) that daughter	1. From that fatherland
2. (By) the same foster-son	2. (With) the same foster-daughter	2. From the same fatherland
3. (By) that orphan boy himself	3. (With) that orphan-girl herself	3. From that fatherland itself

## THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

qui, quae, quod, who, which						
	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	qui, who	quae, who	quod, which	qui, who	quae, who	quae, which
Gen.	cūjus, whose	cūjus, whose	cūjus, of which	quōrum, whose	quārum, whose	quōrum, of which
Dat.	cui, to, for whom	cui, to, for whom	cui, to, for which	quibus, to, for whom	quibus, to, for whom	quibus, to, for which
Acc.	quem, whom	quam, whom (Vocative wanting)	quod, which	quōs, whom	quās, whom (Vocative wanting)	quae, which
Abl.	quō, by, with, from whom	quā, by, with, from whom	quō, by, with, from which	quibus, by with, from whom	quibus, by, with, from whom	quibus, by, with, from which

NOTE.—The Adjective Relative also was sometimes used as it is in English, viz.: *quā spē adducti*, by which hope led on.

## THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

quis, quae, quid, who? what?						
Singular			Plural			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis, who? quī, what—?	quae what—?	quid, what? quod, which—?	quī, who?	quae, who?	quae, what?
Gen.	cūjus, whose?	cūjus, whose?	cūjus, of what?	quōrum, whose?	quārum, whose?	quōrum, of what?
Dat.	cui, to, for whom?	cui, to, for whom?	cui, to, for what?	quibus, to, for whom?	quibus, to, for whom?	quibus, to, for what?
Acc.	quem, whom?	quam, whom?	quid, what? or quod, which?	quōs, whom?	quās, whom?	quae, what?
	(Vocative wanting)			(Vocative wanting)		
Abl.	quō, by, with, from whom?	quā, by, with, from whom?	quō, by, with, from what?	quibus, by, with, from whom?	quibus, by, with, from whom?	quibus, by, with, from what?

NOTE.—The Interrogative *quis* is mostly used *substantively*, viz.: *quis? who? quae? who? quid? what?*  
The Interrogative *qui* is mostly used *adjectively*, viz.: *qui vir? which man? quae femina? which woman? quod oppidum? which town?*

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid,	} some	quisquis, whoever	(Feminine wanting)	quidquid, whaterer
aliqui,	aliquod,	aliquod,		quisque,	quaeque,	quicque, quidque,
						} each (one of more than two)
quisquam, (Feminine wanting)	quicquam,	quidquam,	} any (one at all)	uterque,	utraque,	utrumque,
						} either (of two) both (regarded severally)
quidam, quaedam,	quiddam,	quoddam,	} a certain	ambō,	ambae,	ambō, both
						(regarded as a pair)

## EXERCISES WITH THE RELATIVE

### A

1. Vir, qui agitator erat, est nunc arator.
2. Vir, qui erat lector, est nunc litterator.
3. Frater suus, qui erat tutor, est nunc doctor.
4. Dux eorum, qui erat venator, est nunc victor.
5. Eadem femina, quae erat venatrix, est nunc victrix.

### C

1. Puer, qui septem sorores habet, est felix.
2. Puella, quae quattuor fratres habet, est misera.
3. Pupillus, qui duo avos habet, est industrius.
4. Pupilla, quae duas avias habet, est ignava.

### B

1. He, who was an instructor, is now a professor.
2. The man, who was a merchant, is now a banker.
3. Her grandson, who was a builder, is now a sculptor.
4. That boy, who was an idler, is now a spy.
5. This woman, who was a faithful nurse, is now a spy.

### D

1. The boy, who was daring, is now more prudent.
2. The girl, who was sad, is now very happy.
3. The son, who was industrious, is now very lazy.
4. The instructor, who was ignorant, is now rather wise.

## EXERCISES WITH THE INTERROGATIVE

### E

1. Qui homo? Quae urbs? Quod oppidum?
2. Cujus ager? Cujus silva? Cujus negotium?
3. Quorum libri? Quarum voces? Quorum verba?
4. Virgo, quae patria est tua?—*Plaut.*

### G

1. Quis est qui? Quae erat virgo?
2. Quis te salutavit? Cujus filius est?
3. Quid doctor dicit? Quid non dixit?
4. Quis eum senator appellavit?—*Cic.*
5. Quibus diebus erat luna plena?

### F

1. What mountain? What maiden? What song?
2. Whose horse? Whose house? Whose temple?
3. Whose boys? Whose hands? Whose names?
4. Sailors, what father-lands are yours?

### H

1. Who is the man? Who was the girl?
2. Who is thy father? Thy mother?
3. Who was his brother? Her sister?
4. Whose daughter is she? Whose grandmother?
5. My daughter, what hope is thine?

## THE NINE IRREGULAR PRONOUN ADJECTIVES

**alius**, *another*

**ūllus**, *any* (at all)

**uter**, *which* (of the two)

**sōlus**, *alone, only*

**ūnus**, *one*

**alter**, *the other* (one of two)

**nūllus**, *none, no*

**neuter**, *neither* (of the two)

**tōtus**, *whole*

Sing.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>alter</b>	<b>altera</b>	<b>alterum</b>
Gen.	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>	<b>alterius</b>
Dat.	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>aliī</b>	<b>alterī</b>	<b>alterī</b>	<b>alterī</b>
Acc.	<b>aliū</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>alterū</b>	<b>alterā</b>	<b>alterū</b>
Abl.	<b>aliō</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliō</b>	<b>alterō</b>	<b>alterā</b>	<b>alterō</b>
Sing.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<b>uter</b>	<b>utra</b>	<b>utrum</b>	<b>tōtus</b>	<b>tōta</b>	<b>tōtum</b>
Gen.	<b>utrius</b>	<b>utrius</b>	<b>utrius</b>	<b>tōtius</b>	<b>tōtius</b>	<b>tōtius</b>
Dat.	<b>utrī</b>	<b>utrī</b>	<b>utrī</b>	<b>tōtī</b>	<b>tōtī</b>	<b>tōtī</b>
Acc.	<b>utrum</b>	<b>utram</b>	<b>utrum</b>	<b>tōtum</b>	<b>tōtam</b>	<b>tōtum</b>
Abl.	<b>utrō</b>	<b>utrā</b>	<b>utrō</b>	<b>tōtō</b>	<b>tōtā</b>	<b>tōtō</b>

NOTE.—The Nine Irregular Pronoun Adjectives have no Vocatives. Their Plurals are like **bonus**.

### Exercises

- | M.   | F.                      | N.                       |
|--|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. <b>alius</b> vir  | <b>alia</b> fēmina      | <b>aliud</b> animal      |
| 2. <b>aliō</b> virō  | <b>aliā</b> fēminā      | <b>aliō</b> animālī      |
| 3. <b>alter</b> puer   | <b>altera</b> puella    | <b>alterum</b> carmen    |
| 4. <b>alterius</b> puerī   | <b>alterius</b> puellae | <b>alterius</b> carminis |
| 5. <b>aliī</b> puerī   | <b>aliī</b> puellae     | <b>aliī</b> carminī      |
| 6. <b>ūllus</b> nauta  | <b>ūlla</b> mālus       | <b>nūllum</b> caput      |
| 7. <b>uter</b> equus?  | <b>utra</b> insula?     | <b>neutrum</b> crūs      |
| 8. <b>sōlus</b> Jūpiter  | <b>sōla</b> virgō       | <b>tōtum</b> mare        |
| 9. Rūri dum sum ego ūnōs sex diēs.— <i>Plaut.</i> Unus post ūnum.        |                         |                          |
| 10. Vir ūnus tōtīus Graeciae facile doctissimus Platō erat.— <i>Cic.</i> |                         |                          |
| 11. Ego tū sum, tū es ego, unius animī sumus.—† <i>Plaut.</i>            |                         |                          |



## EXERCISES WITH PRONOUNS AND PRONOUN ADJECTIVES

### A

1. Alius homō.
2. Alius nēmō.—*Cic.*
3. Nēmō alter.—*Plin.*
4. Est alius quidam.
5. Alia omnia.

NOTE.—*Alii, some . . . alii, others.*  
*Alter, the one . . . alter, the other.*

### B

1. Mulier, quā mulier alia nulla est pulchrior.  
(than) whom
2. Avēs alterius colōris.
3. Ex eā diē ad hanc diem.—*Cic.*
4. Alii equōs, alii mūlōs, alii bovēs, alii caprōs,  
 alii porcōs, alii ovēs et agnōs habent.

NOTE.—Celsus, called the "Cicero of physicians," left us eight books on Roman medicine; enumerating the fevers, he uses *aliae* seventeen times in one sentence.

### C

1. Nēmō est alteri similis.
2. Primō diē, alterō diē, tertiō diē, deinde reliquīs diēbus.—†*Cic.*
3. Alter ego. Alter idem.
4. Amicus est tamquam alter idem.—*Cic.*  
as if were

### D

1. Alteram ille amat sorōrem, ego alteram.
2. Duo hominēs ascendērunt, ūnus Pharisaeus et alter publicānus.—*Vulg.*
3. Alter alterius ōva frangit.—*Cic.*
4. Alter semper magnus, alter saepe turpissimus.—*Cic.*

### E

1. Nullā aliā in civitatē.
2. Nullus alter, nullus ūnus.—*Plaut.*
3. Nōnnulla pars populi.

NOTE.—*Nōnnullus, not none = some.*

### F

1. Nullā aliā in civitatē ūllum domicilium libertas habet.—*Cic.*
2. Nullus alter, nullus ūnus felicius est.
3. Unus atque alter et mox plūrēs.—*Suet.*

### G

1. Utrum est melius?
2. Quid bonum est, quid malum, quid neutrum?
3. Homō nullius colōris.—*Prov.*

### H

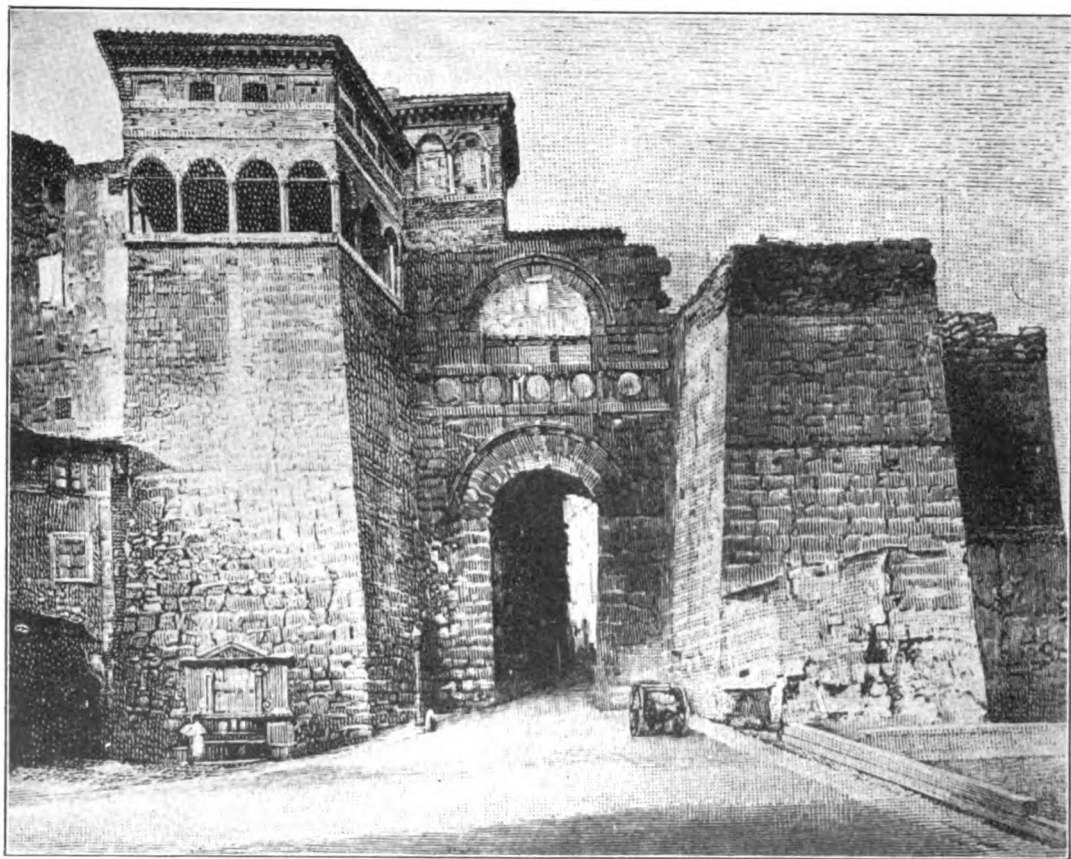
1. Hōrum agnōrum uter est pinguior?
2. Uter nostrum est populāris? Tūne an ego?
3. Hōrum uter est insānior?
4. Nostrum uter est blandior?
5. In utram partem fluit flūmen?

### I

1. Sōlus inter omnēs.
2. Sōlā sub rūpe.—*Verg.*
3. Sōla insula, mōns sōlus.

### J

1. Rōmae, per tōtam urbem vigiliās habuērunt.  
at Rome
2. Tōtō in orbe terrārum.—*Liv.*
3. Tōtum in eō est.—*Cic.*

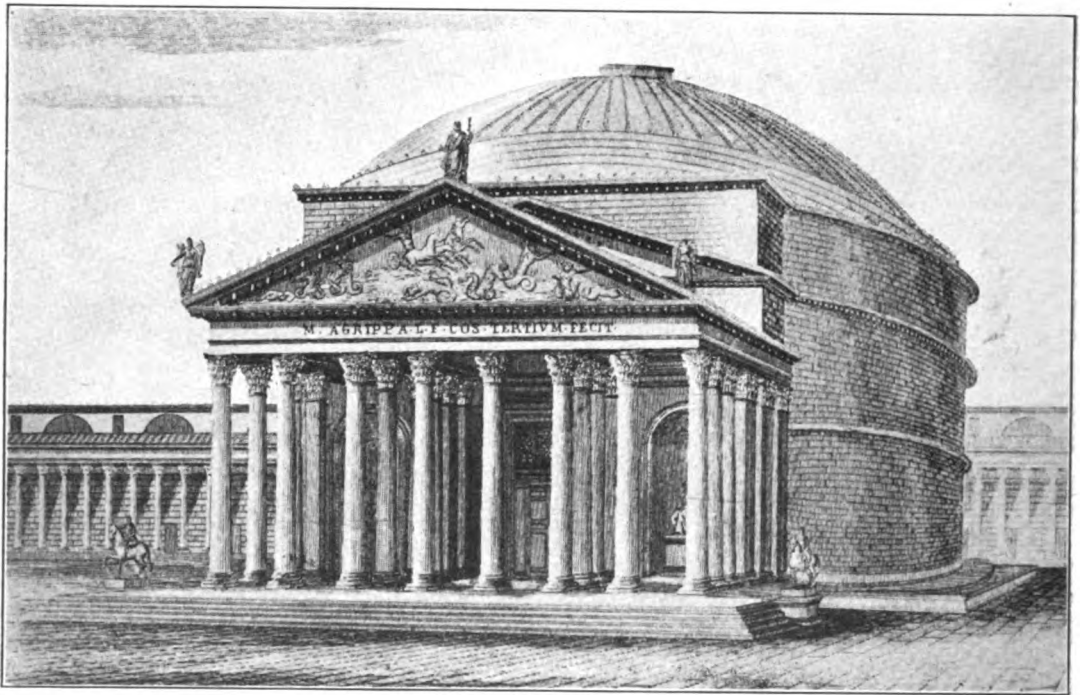


**MURUS ET PORTA**

---

## PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, INTERJECTIONS

---



THE PANTHEON

## PREPOSITIONS

A Preposition is a word used to join other words, and also to show the relation between them.

### 26 Prepositions take the Accusative

<b>ad</b> , to	<b>ergā</b> , towards	<b>post</b> , pōne, behind
<b>adversus</b> , towards	<b>extrā</b> , outside	<b>praeter</b> , beyond
<b>adversum</b> , against	<b>infrā</b> , below	<b>prope</b> , near
<b>ante</b> , before	<b>inter</b> , between, among	<b>propter</b> { near
<b>apud</b> , near, at	<b>intrā</b> , within	{ on account of
<b>circum</b> , circā, round	<b>juxtā</b> , near	<b>secundum</b> , next to
<b>circiter</b> , about	<b>ob</b> , on account of	<b>suprā</b> , above
<b>cis</b> , citrā, this side of	<b>pene</b> , in the power of	<b>trāns</b> , across
<b>contrā</b> , opposite to	<b>per</b> , through	<b>ultrā</b> , on the farther side of

### Exercises

#### A LATIN

- ad**, to (a fixed point), (places), (opp. ab)  
Ad portam, ad agrum, ad oppidum.
- adversus**, towards  
Est enim pietas justitia adversus deōs.—Cic.
- adversum**, against  
Adversum lēgēs. Adversum deōs.
- ante**, before (objects at rest)  
Ante oculōs. Ante ōra.
- apud**, near, at (objects at rest), (persons)  
Apud eōs. Apud tē. Apud sē.
- circum**, circā, round  
Circā flūmina et lacūs frequēns nebula est.
- circiter**, about  
Octāvam circiter hōram.
- cis**, citrā, this side of  
Cis Tiberim. Citrā mare.
- contrā**, opposite, face to face, in front, eye to eye  
Contrā Hispāniam. Templā contrā nōs.
- ergā**, towards, (of persons)  
Ergā aliquem benevolus. Ergā mē.
- extrā**, outside (opp. intrā)  
Aut intrā mūrōs aut extrā.

#### B ENGLISH

- To the gates, to the garden, to the temple.
- Towards the mountains. Towards the sea.
- Against mankind. Against the state.
- Before the altar. Before my house.
- Near her. Near him. Near whom.
- Round the city. Round the island.
- About noon. About twenty years.
- This side of the Rhine. This side of the Alps.
- Opposite me. In front of him.
- Towards men. Towards the king.
- Outside the gate. Outside those regions.

## PREPOSITIONS

### 26 Prepositions take the Accusative

#### Exercises

##### A LATIN

12. **infrā**, *below*  
Infrā caelum et sidera nox cadit.—*Tac.*
13. **inter**, *between, among*  
Inter Padum atque Alpēs.—*Liv.* Inter sē.  
Locus inter duōs lūcōs.—*Liv.* Inter nōs.
14. **intrā**, *within*  
Intrā annōs XIV. Intrā breve tempus.—*Suet.*
15. **juxtā**, *near (of place)*  
Tōtōs diēs juxtā focum atque ignem agunt.
16. **ob**, *on account of, (against in composition)*  
Nec ob aliam causam ūllam.
17. **penes**, *in the power or possession of*  
Cōsul penes sē est.
18. **per**, *through, (or over, space or time)*  
Per tōtam urbem. Per eandem noctem.
19. **post**, **pōne**, *after, behind (opp. ante)*  
Victor manūs servī post tergum vinxit.
20. **praeter**, *beyond, past*  
Praeter omnēs hominēs aliōs.
21. **prope**, *near, (in space and time)*  
Prope amnem. Prope lūcem.
22. **propter**, *on account of, near (day)light*  
Propter Platōnis statuam. Propter quod.
23. **secundum**, *next to, after, (in space and time)*  
Secundum patrem hic est proximus.
24. **suprā**, *above, (of place and time)*  
Suprā eum locum. Suprā duōs mensēs.
25. **trāns**, *across*  
Trāns flūmen. Trāns Euphrātem.
26. **ultrā**, *on the farther side of*  
Cis Padum ultrāque.

##### B ENGLISH

12. Below the town. Below the Moon.
13. A valley between two mountains.  
Between two seas is Asia.
14. Within 20 days. Within themselves.
15. Near the Rhine. Near the palace.
16. On account of that very thing.
17. The books are in the possession of a scribe.
18. Through all the streets. Through the winter.
19. Behind me. Behind us. One after another.
20. Beyond which. Beyond all other things.
21. Near the town. Near midday.
22. Islands near Sicily. On account of that very cause.
23. After you. After us. After this day.
24. Above his head. Above 4000 men.
25. Across the sea. Across the Alps.
26. What country is on the farther side of the Danube?

## PREPOSITIONS

### 8 Prepositions Take the Ablative

**ā, ab, abs, from**  
**cōram, in presence of**  
**cum, with**  
**dē, down, from**  
**ex, ē, out of**  
**prae** { *in front of*  
           *at the head of*  
**prō, before**  
**sine, without**

### 4 Prepositions take either the Accusative or Ablative

**in, into, (motion to) Acc.**  
**in, in, (rest in) Abl.**  
**sub, under, (under which a thing moves) Acc.**  
**sub, under, (under which a thing rests) Abl.**  
**subter, beneath**  
**super** { *over, (situation)* } Acc.  
           { *above, (position)* }  
           { *about, (reference)* } Abl.

### Exercises

#### A

#### LATIN

1. **ab, ā, abs, from** (a fixed point) (opp. **ad**)  
     Ab urbe, ā mē. Calor est ā sōle.
2. **cōram, in the presence of**  
     Cōram omnibus, cōram iudicibus.
3. **cum, with, (opp. sine)**  
     Cicerō cum Pansā vixit in Pompējānō.
4. **dē, down from, from, of, (midway between ab and ex)**  
     A classe, dē mūrō, ex equō.  
     (The Romans got down from a bed or chair, = arose)
5. **ex, ē, out of, (opp. in)**  
     Ex urbe, ex Africā, ē currū dēsilit.
6. **prae, at the fore, in front of, at the head of**  
     Ille prae sē gladium habet.
7. **prō, before**  
     Prō rostris, prō templis, prō mūrō.
8. **sine, without**  
     Nōn sine magnā spē, sine fine.

#### B

#### ENGLISH

1.  
     From the sea, from us. From the 8th day.
2.  
     In the presence of the people, in the presence of her.
3.  
     With the first light, with a very loud voice.
4.  
     Down from the sky, down from a mountain, down from the temple.
5.  
     Out of Spain, out of Asia. Out of the whole number.
6.  
     In front of me, in front of himself.
7.  
     Before the gates of the city, before thy feet.
8.  
     The city is without kings, without a name.

## CONJUNCTIONS

A Conjunction is a word used to connect single words, or phrases, or whole sentences.

**et, -que, and**

**atque**, (ac before consonants only), *and, and also*

Correlatives { **et** . . . **et**, **-que** . . . **-que**, both . . . and  
**cum** . . . **tum**, not only . . . but also  
**aut** . . . **aut**, either . . . or  
**nec** . . . **nec**, **neque** . . . **neque**, neither  
. . . **nor**

**tamen** nevertheless, yet

**sed** (begins a clause), . . . } *but*

**autem** (after one or more words) }

**nam** (begins a clause.—Cic.) }

**enim** (after one or two words) } *for*

**quia, quod, because**

**quamquam**, although

**sī, if**

**nisi, unless**

**ergō**, . . . } *therefore*  
**itaque**, and so, accordingly, }  
**igitur**, (after one or two words usually), }

**nōne** . . . ? *whether . . . not?* (Answer Yes expected)

**-ne** . . . ? *whether or not?* (Asking information)

**num** . . . ? *whether?* (Answer No expected)

### Sentences

#### A

1. Vir et audax et malus fuit.
2. Locus is est melior, quem et nōn coquit sōl et tangit rōs.—*Varr.*
3. Plūs plūsq̄ue. Magis magisque. Minus minusque. Mē meōsque.
4. Longē lātēque. Terrā marique. Tempus locusque. Jūs fasque est.
5. Noctēsque diēsque. Mēque tēque.
6. Insulae multae atque magnae positae in Aegaeō mari sunt.
7. Di vim suam longē atque lātē diffundunt.
8. Mūs sub terris posuitque domōs atque horrea fēcit.—*Verg.*
9. Haec atque illa diēs atque alia atque alia trāseunt.
10. Pariter patribus ac plēbī cārus fuit.—*Liv.*
11. Luxuriēs cum omnī aetātī turpis tum senectūtī foedissima est.—*Cic.*
12. Terrā aut silvīs horrida aut palūdibus foeda.
13. Sed tamen vincit ipsa natūra saepe ratiōnem.—*Cic.*
14. Erat autem in puerō summa suāvitas.

#### B

1. Urbs, quia postrēma aedificāta est, Neāpolis nōminātur.—*Cic.* *it was built*  
*Naples is named*
2. Nocte ambulābat, quod somnum capere nōn posset.—*Cic.* *used to walk to get was able*
3. Medici quamquam intelligunt saepe, tamen numquam aegris dicunt.—*Cic.*
4. Sī haec civitās est, civis sum; sī nōn, exsul sum.—†*Cic.* *I am*
5. Libertas, sī aequa nōn est, nē\* libertas quidem est.—*Cic.*
6. Memoria minuitur nisi eam exerceās.—*Cic.* *is lessened you exercise*
7. Negat haec filiam mē suam esse; nōn ergō haec māter mea est.—*Plaut.* *to be*
8. Itaque aēr et ignis et aqua et terra prima sunt.—*Cic.*
9. Nihil obstat, ergō omnia prosperē, igitur beātē movent.—*Cic.*
10. In quō igitur locō est?—*Cic.*
11. Quaerō nōne id effēcirit?—*Cic.* *I inquire he has accomplished*
12. Quaerō effēciritne id?
13. Quaerō num id effēcirit?

\* NOTE.—The combination **ne quidem** = *not even*.



## INTERJECTIONS

The Interjection is a word of Exclamation. It mostly shows surprise or strong feeling. The Romans had about 40 Interjections, which had originated mostly in imitation of natural sounds heard all about them.

**O! Oh! O! Oh!** Expressing joy, grief, pain, surprise

**iō! ho! yo ho!** Joy

**ohē! ho there!** stop!

**oho!**  
**ohoho!** } *oho! aha!* Joy, surprise

**heus!** *holloa there!* Used to call attention

**heu!**  
**ēheu!** } *ah! alas!* Pain or grief

**eho!** *soho!* Scolding

**taxtax!** *whack! whack!* {onomatope,  
 sound of blows

**ehem!** *ahem!* Joyful surprise

**hui! hah! phew!** { Astonishment  
 Admiration

**ecce! lo! behold!** Emphasis

**ha ha hae! ha! ha! ha!** Laughter

**attat!**  
**attatatatae!** } *alas! strange!* { Joy,  
 pain,  
 wonder,  
 fright

**st! hist! hush! hark!** said with finger to mouth

**phu! fie!**  
**phy! bosh!** } Wonder, disgust

**sōdes! prithee!** colloquial

**edepol! indeed!**

## Sentences

### A

1. O vir fortis! O pater bone et benigne!
2. O ego ter fēlix!—*Or.*
3. O soror, o conjux, o fēmina sōla superstes!
4. O hominem nēquam!
5. O faciem pulchram!
6. Oh, probus homō sum!—*Plaut.*  
*I am*
7. Iō, iō, liber ad tē veniō!—*Plin.*  
*I come*
8. Iō hymen hymenaeae, iō hymen!—*Plaut.*  
*Hymen O Hymen (= god of marriage)*
9. Ohē jam satis est, ohē jam dēsine!—*Hor.*  
*desist!*
10. Heus vōs, puerī, quid istic agitis!—*Plaut.*  
*are you doing*
11. Heu mē, per urbem fābula quanta fui!—*Hor.*  
*joke was I*
12. Heu mē miserum!
13. Eheu, quid volui miserō mihi!—*Verg.*  
*have I wished*
14. Eheu, quam ego nunc displiceō mihi!—*Ter.*  
*do I displease*
15. Eho puer, curre ad Bacchidem!—*Ter.*  
*run Bacchis*
16. Eho mī bone vir, quid ais!—*Ter.*  
*sayest thou*
17. Eheu, mī pater, tū hic eras!—*Ter.*
18. Hui tardus est!
19. Hui quam diū dē nūgis dicis?—*Cic.*  
*are you going to talk*

### B

1. Ecce mē! Ecce nōs!
2. Ecce Palaemon quī venit!—*Verg.*
3. Ecce ad mē advenit mulier!
4. Ecce mē, quī id faciō nōbis!—*Ter.*  
*I am doing*
5. Ille mē nōn videt, attat ecce ipsum!—*Plaut.*
6. Attat, perii Hercle ego miser!—*Plaut.*  
*I am lost by Hercules*
7. St! st! Tacēte! Quid hoc clāmōris!  
*be ye still*
8. St! Tacē atque abi!—*Plaut.*  
*Be thou still go away*
9. St! Tacē, tacē, meus hic est homō!—*Plaut.*
10. Phu, i in malam crucem!—*Plaut.*  
*go*
11. Dic, sōdes, mihi!
12. Dā mihi hoc sōdes!  
*tell*
13. Redde mihi sōdes decem sestertia!—*Cat.*  
*give sestercia*
14. Dic mihi, sōdes, quis ea est, quam vis dūcere uxōrem!—*Plaut.*  
*to lead (as) you wish*
15. Certē edepol sciō!  
*I know*
16. Crēdō edepol equidem dormire sōlem!  
*I trust verily to sleep*
17. Illa edepol memorārī possunt!—*Plaut.*  
*to be remembered are able*
18. Heu, edepol ne ego homo vivō miser!  
*I live*
19. Taxtax tergō meō erit! Nōn cūrō!—*Plaut.*  
*will it be I care*

## VOCABULARY—CHILD-LIFE

**infāns, -fantis, C.** *an infant*

*in-fans, not-speaking*

**infantia, ae, F.** *infancy*

**puer, eri, orig. C.** *a child*

**pueritia, ae, F.** *childhood* { *for boys*  
usually till 17 years,  
*for girls*  
usually till 14 years

**diēs lustricus, Christening Day** { *for boys*  
(sacrifice of purification the 9th day,  
and giving praenomen) *for girls*  
the 8th day

**bullā aurea, the golden locket**  
(hung on by the father, on Christening Day,  
as a charm against the evil eye)

**fascinātiō, ōnis, F.** *the bewitching* (of the evil eye)

**lūdus, i, M.** *play*

**pila, ae, F.** *a ball*

**turbō, inis, M.** *a top*

**verber, eris, N.** *a whip* (to whip the top)

**grallae, ārum, F.** *stilts*

**māter, tris, F.** *the mother*  
(who took full care of the child)

**nūtrix, icis, F.** *a nurse*  
(a slave, very rarely employed)

**bāsium, ii, N.** *a kiss*

**cūnae, ārum, F.** } *the cradle*

**cūnābula, ōrum, N.** }

**lectica, ae, F.** *the coach*

(carried by two slaves)

**crepundia, ōrum, N.** *playthings, toys*

**crepitāculum, i, N.** *a rattle*

**lūnula, ae, F.** *a little moon, (a trinket)*

**dēliciae, ārum, F.** *a darling, a pet*

**pūpa, ae, F.** *a doll*

**trochus, i, M. Gr.** *a hoop*

## GAMES

The little children of earliest Rome loved play. *Knuckle bones, Tāli*, of sheep and goats, served for "jackstones." Tossing up five at once, she who caught most on the back of her hand was winner.

Blindman's Buff was popular then. And in the dusk of evenings the cover of twilight added greatly to the fun of Hide and Seek. When tired of romping, a long board or straight pole, balancing over some old log, afforded a splendid See-saw. *Calculi, pebbles*, and *nucēs, nuts*, made good marbles. These also took the place of Checkers, indoors, on stormy days.

## Sentences

### A

1. Puella parva pūpam suam amat.
2. Puer parvus turbinem suum amat.
3. Omnēs turbinēs verbera sua habuērunt.
4. Trochus erat ferreus circulus cum ānulis circumpositus.  
*set round*
5. Pueri pauci grallās etiam habuērunt.
6. Bulla est insigne, quod ā pueris Rōmānis dē  
*badge*  
collō ante pectus lōrō suspensum gestābātur,  
*was worn*  
signum ingenuitātis et fortunāe.
7. Tempore sūmendae togae virilis bullam ūnā  
*token of free birth*  
cum togā praetextā dēpōnēbant et Laribus  
*of taking*  
dōnābant, sicut puellae Veneri pūpās suās.  
*they used to put away*
8. Libertinī bullam scorteam ex lōrēō nōdō  
*used to present*  
pendentem habēbant.  
*Freedmen's sons leather (made of) a thong*
9. Nescio quis tenerōs oculus mihi fascinat  
*I know not bewitches*  
agnōs.—*Verg.*

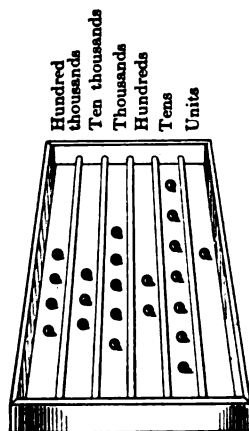
### B

1. Māter erat saepissimē mōtor cūnārum.
2. Inter crepundia puerōrum etiam crepitācula erant.
3. Strepitus crepitāculōrum infantium est nōn molestus.
4. Lūnulae infantibus ornamenta sunt similēs lūnae.
5. Crepundia solēbant esse ānuli, ēnsiculi,  
*used to be finger-rings little swords*  
secūriculae, maniculae, bullae, siculae et  
*little axes little hands little daggers*  
cetera.  
*other things*
6. His etiam crotala, sistra, cymbala,  
*castanets Egyptian rattles cymbals*  
tympāna, addunt.  
*drums*
7. Dā mihi bāsia mille.—*Cat.*  
*give*
8. Cūrārum (est) maxima nūtrix nox.—*Or.*
9. Avēs cūnābula in terrā faciunt.—*Verg.*
10. Mōns Idaeus prima sēdēs, origō, et gentis  
*Ida*  
cūnābula nostrae fuit.

## THE ROMAN SCHOOL

- lūdus, i, M.** { 1. *a play*  
2. *a school* (elementary)
- pergula, ae, F.** { 1. *a shop*  
2. *the school-house*, (a shed open to the street)
- litterātor, ōris, M.** *the teacher* (of 3 R's)
- paedagōgus, i, M.** Gr. *the pedagogue*, (a slave attending the children to school and everywhere out of doors)
- capsa, ae, F.** *a book-satchel*
- capsārius, ii, M.** } *the satchel-carrier*,  
**pedisequus, i, M.** } (following their footsteps)
- ferula, ae, F.** *the rod*
- abacus, i, M.** *the counting-board*,  
(covered with sand or dust)
- calculus, i, M.** *a pebble*  
(for the counting-board)
- tabula, ae, F.** *a writing-tablet*,  
(wood covered with wax)
- stilus, i, M.** *a style* (of iron mostly),  
(for writing on wax tablets)
- liber, bri, M.** *the book*
- lectiō, ōnis, F.** *reading*
- scriptiō, ōnis, F.** *writing*
- arithmētica, ae, F.** Gr. *numbers*

### The Abacus



The number above is 435271.  
To add numbers, new pebbles were laid in their proper sections and the whole then reckoned.  
To subtract, pebbles were thus removed.  
To borrow *ten*, one pebble was taken from the Tens section, and ten single pebbles placed in the Units section.  
To carry *ten*, ten pebbles were taken from a lower, and one pebble placed in the next higher section.  
Numerous calculations were performed.

To the father belonged properly the education of the Roman boy, to the mother that of the girl. Since the father was usually a very busy man, he had little time to spare; besides he frequently found among his slaves some faithful patient fellow, a better scholar even than himself. The sons of neighboring friends were invited, and soon a school grew up, and a **pergula** was rented.

The fee of the teacher was \$3 a year. Little presents besides often came from the boys themselves, especially at Holiday seasons.

The boys brought candles, beginning their school-day before daylight, as they must take a very long "noon" for luncheon and siesta in that very hot climate, returning late for the afternoon session. Generally they hated their teachers, because the whole process of reading, chiefly by memory, and of counting, chiefly with the fingers, was so very hard. Hard for teacher, and hard for pupil, so that little love could thrive between them. However, the boys mostly loved the faithful pedagogue, who led them to school, waited patiently outside all day, then carefully guarded them from the many perils of the crowded streets going home. They remembered him affectionately long years after.

The master, having the only book, read aloud, the boys repeating in sing-song tone syllable by syllable, word by word, line by line, all in concert and audible squares away. The rod was ever ready for the unruly. Prizes awaited the diligent. **Nundinae**, *market-days*, every ninth day, and the great religious festivals, gave the schools numerous holidays. Some boys too could go to the country for the dog-days, when their fathers had a villa. These were fortunate indeed.

### Sentences

A

1. In lūdum ire.—*Plaut.*  
*to go*
2. Litterātor puerōs in pergulā docet.
3. Litterātor pueris ignōrantiam eximit.  
*ignorance takes away*
4. (Paedagōgus) propriē custos (pueris) est vitæ et mōrum.—*Senec.*
5. Paedagōgus malus est stupidus servus, quī caecō est prō baculō; similiter atque  
*to the blind in place of a staff*
- puerum hūc et illūc manū dūcīt.

B

1. Capsārius tabulās filiō divitis in capsā portāvit.
2. Ferula instrūmentum disciplinae fuit.
3. Puerī calculōs in abacō numerant. Magister puerōs lectiōnem per memoriā sine libris docet.
4. Scriptiōnem auxiliō manūs suae positae in manum puerī docet.
5. Arithmēticam auxiliō digitōrum puerōrum mirābiliter docet.

## VOCABULARY—TIME

<b>tempus, oris, N.</b> <i>time</i>	<b>diēs, diēi, { M. and F. in Sing. }</b> <i>a day</i> { M. only in Plur. }
<b>saeculum, i, N.</b> <i>a generation, an age</i> (= 33 years)	<b>hōra, ae, F.</b> <i>an hour</i> , ( $\frac{1}{24}$ th of the time from sunrise to sunset)
<b>aeternitas, ātis, F.</b> <i>eternity</i> , (time past and future)	<b>nox, noctis, F.</b> <i>night</i>
<b>aetas, ātis, F.</b> <i>a lifetime</i>	<b>vigilia, ae, F.</b> <i>a watch</i> , ( $\frac{1}{3}$ th of the time from sunset to sunrise)
<b>aestas, ātis, F.</b> <i>summer</i>	<b>meridiēs, ēi, M.</b> <i>noon</i> (medius-diēs)
<b>vēr, vēris, N.</b> <i>spring</i>	<b>aurōra, ae, F.</b> <i>the dawn, daybreak</i>
<b>autumnus, i, M.</b> <i>autumn</i> , (Sept. 22-Dec. 22)	<b>māne, indecl. N.</b> (old Abl. <i>māni</i> ), <i>morning</i>
<b>hiems, hiemis, F.</b> <i>winter</i>	<b>vesper, eris and erī, M.</b> <i>evening</i>
<b>annus, i, M.</b> <i>a year</i>	<b>hōrologium, ii, N.</b> <i>a clock</i> { a water-clock a sun-dial }
<b>mēnsis, is, M.</b> <i>a month</i>	<b>clepsydra, ae, F.</b> <i>a water-clock</i> , (similar to our sand-glass)

NOTE.—The earliest Roman peasant-farmers knew only three divisions for the day, *māne, meridiēs, vesper, morning, noon, evening*. Soon *forenoon* and *afternoon* came into use. Through nearly 500 years no one had watch or clock of any kind. Then about 275 B. C. the sun-dial was borrowed from the Greeks, who had found it in Babylon. It was a bad time-piece; but still it was kept in use, set up in the Forum behind the Rostra, for 99 years, when a better one was placed beside it. Rich Romans began to have sun-dials at home with a slave to watch and tell the hours to the master. Augustus erected an obelisk as a town clock in the great Campus Martius, to give the time of day to the public by the shadow of the sun upon the ground.

The sun-dial with its eleven lines failed on cloudy days, so the **Clepsydra** was also brought from Greece to tell the hours. But they were of the same length winter and summer. Finally the slave was taught how to close the orifice partly, so that the water would *steal* away slower, and make the hours in summer longer; because the hours in midsummer were about 75 minutes, in midwinter about 44, and only at the equinoxes were they 60 minutes long.

The clepsydra, resembling somewhat our sand-glass, was made of glass, and was used to time the speakers in court and Forum.

The Romans finally adopted for constant use in civil life the camp-custom of 12 hours for the day and 4 watches for the night. The Hebrews had 3 watches only.

The Romans were early risers. Having poor lights, they naturally retired early. Their day's work was from sun to sun, using daylight. But they were more apt to begin before light than to work after dark. At sun-rise boys went to school and men went to work. After the noon-day lunch a siesta was in order, especially in the hot days of the long summers of Italy. It was almost universally enjoyed.

# SENTENCES—TIME

## A

1. Tempus quidem generaliter dēfinire difficile est.—†*Cic.*  
*to define*
2. Tempus esse dicunt intervallum mundi mōtūs.—*Varr*  
*to be they say*
3. Tempus est pars quaedam aeternitātis.
4. Tempus generāle, quia nec initium nec finem habet, aeternitas est.
5. Nunc corpora cūrāre tempus est.—*Liv.*  
*to take care of*
6. Jam tempus est agī rēs.  
*to be done*
7. Erat hibernum tempus annī.—*Caes.*
8. Tempore pāret equus habēnis.—*Or.*  
*obeys the reins*
9. Versūs fundere ex tempore.  
*to pour (forth)*
10. (Rusticus) serit arborēs quae alteri saeculō prōsint.—†*Caecil.*  
*plants which to another may be for (good)*
11. Catō rudi saeculō litterās Graecās didicit.  
*learned*
12. Confer nostram longissimam aetātem cum aeternitāte.—*Cic.*  
*compare*
13. Arabēs campōs et montēs hieme et aestāte (peragrant).—*Cic.*  
*wander over*
14. (Formica) parat in aestāte cibum sibi.
15. Aestātem autumnus sequitur, postea ācris hiems fit.—†*Enn.*  
*comes follows*
16. Diēs primus est vērīs in Aquariō, aestātis in Taurō, autumnī in Leōne, hiemis in Scorpione.—*Varr.*
17. In his locis mātūrae sunt hiemēs.—*Caes.*
18. Nēmō est tam senex, qui sē annum nōn putet posse vivere.—*Cic.*  
*may think to be able to live*

## B

1. Diēs est, nox nōn est; sōl est super terram, diēs est.—*Quint.*
2. Hominēs, qui ex mediā nocte ad proximam median noctem in his hōris XXIV nāti sūnt, unā diē nāti dicuntur.—*Varr.*  
*have been born (us) born are spoken of*
3. (Themistocles) diem noctemque procul ab insulā in salō nāvem tenuit in ancoris.
4. Qui (scrūpulus) virum diēs noctēque stimulat?—*Cic.*  
*what*
5. Hōrās trēs orātor dicit.
6. Nōn amplius quam septem hōrās infāns dormiēbat.  
*more was sleeping*
7. Hōra quota est?
8. Nuntiat hōrās.
9. Milō mediā nocte in campum vēnit: permānsit ad meridiem.—*Cic.*  
*staid came*
10. Noctū ambulābat in publicō Themistocles.  
*used to walk*
11. Nox in quattuor vigiliās dividitur, quae singulae trium hōrārum spatiō supputantur.—*Hier.*  
*is divided are computed*
12. Cum puer tuus ad mē secundā ferē vigiliā vēnisset.—*Cic.*  
*had come*
13. Optima diēi pars est māne.
14. Litterās multō māne mihi dedit.—*Cic.*  
*early he gave*
15. Jam diēi vesper erat.
16. Clepsydra hōrās aquā dimētitur; id est vās vitreum, in cūjus fundō forāmen est guttātīm aquam distillāns.  
*measures drop by drop trickling*
17. In hāc causā mihi aqua haeret.—*Cic.*  
*stops (= I am at a loss)*

# VOCABULARY—THE HEAVENS

**Sōl, Sōlis, M.** *The Sun*

**Lūna, ae, F.** *The Moon*

**stella, ae, F.** *a star*

**stella errāns,**  
**planēs, ētis, M. Gr.** } *a planet, (a wandering star)*

**comētes, ae, M. Gr.** *a comet, (a long-haired star)*

**sidus, eris, N.** *a constellation, (a group of stars)*

**arcus caelestis, the rainbow, (the heavenly bow)**

**fulgur, uris, N.** *sheet lightning*

**fulmen, inis, N.** *bolt lightning, (a thunderbolt)*

**tonitrus, ūs, M.** *thunder*

**Volcānus, i, M.** { *Vulcan,*  
(The Fire-god, the smith who wrought  
the fulmina)

**septentrionēs. um, M.** { *The Seven Stars,*  
*The Great Bear,*  
*The North*

**meridiēs, ēi, M.** { *Mid-day, Noon*  
*The South*

**oriēns, tis, M.** { *the rising (sun),*  
*The East*

**occidēns, tis, M.** { *the setting (sun),*  
*The West*

**tempestas, ātis, F.** { *weather, (good or bad)*  
*a storm, (a tempest)*

**Aurōra, ae, F. Gr.** *The Dawn*

**Lūcifer, eri, M.** *The Morning Star*

**Hesperus, i, M. Gr.** *The Evening Star* } *The planet Venus*

## Sentences

### A

1. Quid potest esse sōle mājus?—*Cic.*  
*is able to be (than)*
2. Quī sōlem suum oriri facit super bonōs et  
*to rise makes*  
malōs.—*Vulg. Matt.*
3. Sōl semper hīc est ā mānī ad vesperum.
4. Clārīor quam sōlis radii.
5. (Germāni) deōrum numerō dūcunt Sōlem  
*consider*  
et Volcānum et Lūnam.—*Caes.*
6. Arcus caelestis in caelō micat; pulchrior  
*gleams*  
est quam omnia sīdera.
7. Juppiter terram, mare, sīdera mōvet.—*Ov.*
8. Arcum meum pōnam in nūbibus.  
*I will put*
9. Jūpiter fulmen dē caelō mittit.
10. Tonitrū et fulgure terruit orbem.—*Ov.*  
*he terrified*
11. Feriunt summōs fulgura montēs.—*Hor.*  
*strike*
12. Tonitrus auribus terribilis est. Caelum  
*trembles*  
tonitrū tremescit.
13. Aurōra novō cum spargit lūmine terrās.  
*sprinkles*
14. Infima quinque errantium stellārum ter-  
raeque proxima est Lūna.
15. Stella Veneris, quae Φωσφόρος Graece,  
*is called* *it goes before*  
Latinē dicitur Lūcifer, cum antegreditur  
sōlem, cum subsequitur autem, Hesperus.  
*it follows after*
16. Lūcifer diem dūcit, Hesperus noctem.

### B

1. (Belgae) spectant in septentrionem et  
*slope*  
orientem sōlem.—*Caes.*
2. Inflectēns sōl cursum tum ad septen-  
*now*  
trionēs, tum ad meridiem, aestātēs et  
*now*  
hiemēs efficit.—*Cic.*  
*causes*
3. Tempestas (horrida) sine mōre furit.—*Verg.*  
*parallel rages*
4. Quem neque periculī tempestas neque  
honōris aura potuit umquam dē suō  
cursū aut spē aut metū dēmōvēre.—*Cic.*  
*to move away*
5. Rem tradit ventis.  
*he casts*
6. Ventī ruunt et terrās turbine perflant.  
*rush out* *blow over*
7. Plēna lūna labōrat quod ea dēfēcit.  
*labors* *has failed (= has been eclipsed)*
8. Stellae sunt Jovis oculi; omnēs hominēs  
vident.
9. Tiberis flūmen in occidentem fluit.  
*see* *flows*
10. Micat inter omnēs Jūlium sidus, velut  
*gleams* *of Julius*  
inter ignēs lūna minōrēs.—*Hor.*
11. Cicerō planētās vocat stellās errantēs,  
*to wander they seem*  
quia errāre videantur, cum idem semper  
spatium servant sīdera cetera.  
*preserve* *the other*

# VOCABULARY—THE UNIVERSE

**Mundus, i, M.** { *The Universe*  
neatness, order } *κόσμος*  
**tempus, oris, N.** *time*  
**Chaos, (Abl. Chao), N.** *space, (boundless, empty)*  
**atomus, i, F.** *Gr. an atom, (the smallest particle of matter)*  
**mōtus, ūs, M.** *Motion*  
**nātūra, ae, F.** *Nature, (the operative principle)*  
**ars, artis, F.** *art, (the creative principle)*  
**anima, ae, F.** { *wind,*  
*breath,*  
*Life, (physical)*  
**animus, i, M.** *Soul = {faculties}*  
*{affections}*  
**caelum, i, N.** *the sky* } *Heaven,*  
*(the abode of the gods only)*  
**Olympus, i, M.** *Gr. Mt. Olympus*

## THE FIVE ELEMENTS

**elementum, i, N.** *An Element*  
**terra, ae, F.** *Earth*  
**aqua, ae, F.** *Water*  
**āēr, āeris, M.** *Air*  
**ignis, is, (Abl. ignis), M.** *Fire*  
**Quinta Essentia** } *Æther*  
**aether, eris, M.** }

## THE FOUR QUALITIES

**frigidus, a, um, cold**  
**fervidus, a, um, hot**  
**āridus, a, um, dry**  
**ūmidus, a, um, wet**

## Sentences

### A

1. Est enim mundus quasi commūnis deōrum atque hominum domus, aut urbs utrōrumque.—*Cic.*  
*of both*
2. Tempus esse dicunt intervallum mundi mōtūs; id dīvisum in partēs aliquot est, maximē ab sōlis et lūnae cursū.—*Varr.*  
*to be*
3. Animus est, quō sapimus, anima, quā vivimus.—*Non.*  
*by which we are wise* *by which we have life*
4. Frōns est animi jānuā.—*Q. Cic.*
5. Anima omnis carnis in sanguine est.—*Vulg.*
6. Mihi vērō omne tempus est ad meōs librōs vacuum.—*Cic.*  
*to me*
7. Deus mōtum dedit caelō.  
*gave*
8. Pherecēdes primus dixit animōs esse hominum sempiternōs.—*Cic.*  
*Pherecydes declared to be*
9. Cum (animus) exierit et in liberum caelum quasi domum suam vēnerit.—*Cic.*  
*has gone out*
10. Regnum meum nōn est dē hōc mundō.
11. Caelum dicunt Graeci Olympum montem in Macedonia omnēs.—*Varr.*  
*call Olympus Macedonia*
12. Cicerō ipse dē aeternitatē animōrum cōgitat et apertē dicit.  
*thinks speaks*

### B

1. Elementa sunt quattuor, terra, aqua, āēr, et ignis; potestātēs parēs his sunt, frigida, fervida, ārida, et ūmida.—*Cic.*
2. Terra est frīgida et ārida.  
Aqua est frīgida et ūmida.  
Aēr est fervidus et ūmidus.  
Ignis est fervidus et āridus.
3. Itaque āēr et ignis et aqua et terra prima sunt.—*Cic.*  
*the first (things)*
4. Terra est elementum frigidum et siccum, quod quoniam reliqua omnia gravitatē exsuperat, infimum sibi inter ea locum vindicāvit.  
*which since now it had surpassed for itself them has claimed*
5. Terra locāta in mediā est sēdēs mundi, solida et globōsa, et vestita flōribus, herbis, arboribus, et frūgibus.—†*Cic.*  
*clothed*
6. Aristoteles quintam quandam nātūrā cēnses esse, ē quā sit mēns.  
*Aristotle a certain thinks there is may be*
7. Cicerō est auctor verbi **essentia**.
8. Quid sī nunc caelum ruat?—*Prov.*  
*fall*

## THE ROMAN IDEA OF CREATION

The aborigines in the wilds of Italy had borrowed from the Greeks the letters of their Alphabet to make the Latin Language. Centuries later, civilization awakening, scholars of Italy, in burning curiosity to know the reasons and causes of things around them, again were forced to borrow from the Greeks as the most learned people of the World, and this time it was the First Principles of Philosophy they got.

When Xerxes the Great led from the East over his bridge of boats across the Dardanelles his vast army of many nations, 2,317,610 men, with slaves and camp-followers of equal number, as history tells, to conquer the rebellious little city of Athens, the Wise Men of the East came along. Soon this great host fled away homeward after their terrible defeat at Salamis, but the Wise Men remained to teach the Greeks.

The busy minds of the Greeks now quickly invented the so-called Atomic Theory. This tells that the Universe is composed of Chaos, *empty space*, and of Atoms, countless and infinite. Those of the mind or soul were round, fiery atoms. Then came a Philosopher who proved that *space* was not *empty*; space contained air, which, confined in bladders, was a real substance. There was, he taught, one great Mind or Soul, which brought the riotous atoms to order, then governed and created all things: all this was the doctrine of Anaxagoras.

### **Socrates.**

Socrates, one of his pupils, declared he had been called by Heaven to be a *teacher of wisdom and virtue*. He strove to awaken in the minds of the young a love of wisdom, (*i. e.*, goodness). His hearers found their tears pouring down as he talked; his siren voice being, they said, "like the voice of a God." He first taught that the proper study of mankind is man. That God not only is creator and ruler of the Universe of atoms, but that he guides and guards the lives of obedient men. Socrates is usually reckoned the "most perfect man of all antiquity." Socrates taught about 30 years at Athens and died 399 B. C., aged 70.

### **Plato.**

One day a father led to Socrates his son, a youth of 20 years, surnamed Plato, on account of the broadness of his forehead; descended through his mother from Solon the great law-giver, the Moses of Athens. Plato listened to the teachings of Socrates for 9 years. Then, after traveling widely, he returned and opened in Athens a School called the Academy, (near the grove of *Acadēmus*). Therein he taught all branches. He taught that there was One Supreme God, the Cause of all things, and that the human soul is immortal, and that men can rise in wisdom and virtue only by bringing their minds near to God, forgetting the love of gain, and the love of power. "No other philosopher has contributed so much toward the moral and intellectual culture of the human race." Men and women of the finest families of all Greece attended his school. Plato taught nearly 50 years at Athens and died 347 B. C., aged 80.



## THE ROMAN IDEA OF CREATION

### Aristotle.

Aristotle at 17 also came to school at Athens. He staid 20 years. He was Plato's favorite, who used to call him the "Intellect" of his school. Then he was invited to become the teacher of Alexander the Great. For 6 years' instruction a salary of \$800,000, besides gifts of great value, were his reward. Returning to Athens, Aristotle opened a school called the Lycéum in a garden with shady or covered walks attached to the temple of **Apollo Lyceus**.

His nature was so active and restless, that he gave his lectures *walking to and fro*, hence his school was often styled the "peripatetic" school.

He had upon his roll many very distinguished men of Greece. His books have been valued and diligently studied throughout Europe and Asia for 2000 years since. The "father of Logic," the "founder of the science of Natural History," a great mathematician, writer and thinker, his intellect is today rated to be the greatest the world has yet known.

Aristotle taught 13 years at Athens and died 322 B. C., aged 62.

Promising sons of wealthy Roman families for many generations went from Rome to the schools of Athens to learn the teachings of Aristotle. Cicero went. He learned to speak Greek fluently, also Greek poetry and philosophy.

The Romans borrowed the Greek theory of the Universe, having no explanation of their own.

Plato had taught that fire atoms were little pyramids having corners, earth atoms were cubes. All have hooks to cohere and make things.

Aristotle, with his great broad mind, had plotted the whole Universe. Earth, a globe, it was plain from Eclipses, a solid heavy globe, 50,000 miles around, was the stationary centre of the Universe. Around it, 1st was a layer of Water, filling all its rivers, seas, and oceans, water being *next heavy* to earth; 2d was a great thick layer or hollow sphere of Air, being *next heavy* to water; 3d was another hollow sphere of invisible Fire, the *lightest* of all. These elements had *up* and *down* motion, towards the centre and away from the centre of the Earth: and this fact was plain, because all things let fall had motion *down*; but smoke and steam, two kinds of air, had motion *up*.

Outside the four elements was a 5th layer, **Quinta Essentia**, or *Ether*. Earth with its three surrounding layers of Water, Air and Fire, like the coats of an onion, was the stationary centre. Around them all Ether full of stars *revolved*. This was plain because the stars were seen to rise and set, to go over the Earth every night. The vault of Highest Heaven moved continually in a circle around the Earth. Between Ether and the layer of Fire is the Lowest Heaven, wherein the five *planets*, **stellae errantēs**, *wandering stars*, also Sun and Moon, were seen to roll in the opposite direction to the stars above them. They did not spin, because the Moon always showed the same face. They rolled on forever.

Ether was the substance out of which were created the Heavenly Bodies, the Gods, the Soul of Man. The atoms of Ether cling together with their little hooks or fly apart through the powers of Love and Hate, which influence men.

Such were the theories of the Grecian philosophers. There were more than twenty of these wise men, who spent their lives traveling in the East, or in thinking, teaching and writing books at home. They toiled faithfully for us through the black darkness of ignorance, and the people of today enjoy the light of knowledge dawning after their long night of toil.

## THE VERB

A Verb is a word which *asserts* or *declares* some **action** or **being**.

### THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

#### Indicative Mood. Present Tense

**Sing.**                      1st (ā)  
1. amō, *I love*

2. amās { *thou lovest*  
          { *you love*

3. amat, *he loves*

**Plur.**  
1. amāmus, *we love*

2. amātis, *you love*

3. amant, *they love*

**Sing.**                      2d (ē)  
1. moneō, *I advise*

2. monēs { *thou advisest*  
          { *you advise*

3. monet, *he advises*

**Plur.**  
1. monēmus, *we advise*

2. monētis, *you advise*

3. monent, *they advise*

**Sing.**                      3d (ē)  
1. regō, *I rule*

2. regis { *thou rulest*  
          { *you rule*

3. regit, *he rules*

**Plur.**  
1. regimus, *we rule*

2. regitis, *you rule*

3. regunt, *they rule*

**Sing.**                      4th (ī)  
1. audiō, *I hear*

2. audis { *thou hearest*  
          { *you hear*

3. audit, *he hears*

**Plur.**  
1. audimus, *we hear*

2. auditis, *you hear*

3. audiunt, *they hear*

## THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

### Indicative Mood. Perfect Tense

1st (ā)

**Sing.**

1. *amāvī* { *I have loved*  
                  *I loved*

2. *amāvisti* { *thou hast loved*  
                  *you have loved*

3. *amāvit*, *he has loved*

**Plur.**

1. *amāvimus*, *we have loved*

2. *amāvistis*, *you have loved*

3. *amāvērunt*, *they have loved*

3d (ē)

**Sing.**

1. *rexi* { *I have ruled*  
          *I ruled*

2. *rexisti* { *thou hast ruled*  
              *you have ruled*

3. *rexit*, *he has ruled*

**Plur.**

1. *reximus*, *we have ruled*

2. *rexistis*, *you have ruled*

3. *rexērunt*, *they have ruled*

2d (ē)

**Sing.**

1. *monui* { *I have advised*  
              *I advised*

2. *monuisti* { *thou hast advised*  
                  *you have advised*

3. *monuit*, *he has advised*

**Plur.**

1. *monuimus*, *we have advised*

2. *monuistis*, *you have advised*

3. *monuērunt*, *they have advised*

4th (i)

**Sing.**

1. *audivi* { *I have heard*  
              *I heard*

2. *audivisti* { *thou hast heard*  
                  *you have heard*

3. *audivit*, *he has heard*

**Plur.**

1. *audivimus*, *we have heard*

2. *audivistis*, *you have heard*

3. *audivērunt*, *they have heard*

## KEY OF ANCIENT AUTHORS

The Golden Age covers the lives of Cicero and Ovid.

The Silver Age covers the Authors from the death of Augustus (14 A. D.) to the death of Hadrian (138 A. D.).

---

**Naev.** = **Cn. Naevius** (264?-199? B. C.), Poet. Founder of Roman Literature.

**Plaut.** = **T. Maccius Plautus** (254-184 B. C.), Writer of Comedy. Great Roman Comic Dramatist.

**Enn.** = **Q. Ennius** (239-169 B. C.), Ancient Roman Poet.

**Ter.** = **P. Terentius Afer** (195-159 B. C.), Writer of Comedy.

**Pac.** = **M. Pacuvius** (220-130 B. C.), Writer of Tragedy.

**Lucil.** = **C. Lucilius** (180-103 B. C.), Earliest Roman Satirist.

### Golden Age

**Lucr.** = **T. Lucretius Carus** (98-55 B. C.), Poet and Philosopher.

**Cat.** = **C. Valerius Catullus** (ob. 54 B. C.), Poet.

**Caes.** = **Caius Julius Caesar** (102-44 B. C.), Soldier, Statesman, Historian.

**Hirt.** = **Aulus Hirtius** (ob. 44 B. C.), Historian.

**Nep.** = **Cornelius Nepos** (fl. 44 B. C.), Biographer.

**Cic.** = **Marcus Tullius Cicero** (106-43 B. C.), Orator, Philosopher, Politician.

**Q. Cic.** = **Quintus Tullius Cicero** (100-43 B. C.), Brother of the Orator.

**Sall.** = **C. Sallustius Crispus** (ob. 35 B. C.), Historian.

**Var.** = **M. Terentius Varro** (116-27 B. C.), Polymath, Writer on Husbandry.

**Verg.** = **P. Vergilius Maro** (70-19 B. C.), Poet.

**Vitr.** = **Vitruvius Pollio** (fl. 10 B. C.), Writer on Architecture.

**Hor.** = **Quintus Horatius Flaccus** (65-8 B. C.), Poet.

**Liv.** = **Titus Livius** (59 B. C.-17 A. D.), Historian.

**Ov.** = **P. Ovidius Naso** (43 B. C.-17 A. D.), Poet.

### Silver Age

**Cels.** = **Aurel. Cornelius Celsus** (fl. 50 A. D.), Physician.

**Pers.** = **Aulus Persius Flaccus** (ob. 62 A. D.), Satirist.

**Sen.** = **L. Annaeus Seneca** (3 B. C.-65 A. D.), Philosopher and Tragedian.

**Plin.** = **C. Plinius Secundus** (major) (23-79 A. D.), Author of *Historia Naturalis*.

**Quint.** = **M. T. Quintilianus** (35-95 A. D.), Roman Rhetorician.

**Mart.** = **M. Valerius Martialis** (41-102 A. D.), Latin Epigrammatist.

**Plin.** = **C. Plinius Caecilius Secundus** (minor) (62-113 A. D.), Writer, Epistles, Panegyric.

**Tac.** = **C. Cornelius Tacitus** (55-119? A. D.), Historian, high among scholars of all ages.

**Juv.** = **D. Junius Juvenalis** (60-140? A. D.), Poet and Satirist.

---

**Suet.** = **C. Suetonius Tranquillus** (70-150? A. D.), Biographer.

**App.** = **Lucius Appuleius** (fl. 150 A. D.), Philosopher.

**Gell.** = **Aulus Gellius** (fl. 175 A. D.), Grammarian.

**Pall.** = **Palladius Rutilius Taurus** (fl. 350 A. D.), Writer on Husbandry.

**Claud.** = **Claudius Claudianus** (fl. 400 A. D.), Last of the Classic Poets.

**Vulg.** = **Hieronymus** = **St. Jerome** (331-420 A. D.), revised Latin Translation of Bible.

## ONE THOUSAND WORDS DEFINED

[This List is designed to include words used in the Latin Sentences and Exercises, some of which are not in the Vocabularies and Declensions.]

### A

**ā, ab, abs,** prep. w. Abl. *by, from*

**abundat,** vb. *abounds*

**ācer, ācris, ācre,** sharp, shrewd, eager

**acus, acūs,** F. a needle

**acūtus, a, um,** pointed, acute

**ad,** prep. w. Acc. *to, at*

**adamas, antis,** M. Gr. a diamond

**addunt,** vb. (they) *add*

**aditus, ūs,** M. approach, access

**ador,** N. spell

**advenit,** vb. *comes up to*

**adversus,** prep. w. Acc. *towards*

**Aegaeus, a, um,** Aegæan

**aeger, gra, grum,** sick, ill

**Aenēas, ae,** M. Aeneas

**aequor, oris,** N. the sea

**aequus, a, um,** equal, equitable, just

**āēr, āeris,** M. the air

**aes, aeris,** N. bronze

**aes aliēnum,** another's money = debt

**Aesculāpius, ū,** M. Aesculapius, (Father of Medicine)

**aestas, ātis,** F. summer (Mar. 22–Sept. 22), first half of the year

**aestuārium, ū,** N. a lagoon (of sea-water)

**aestus, ūs,** M. the tide

**aetas, ātis,** F. age, time of life

**aeternitas, tātis,** F. eternity

**Africa, ae,** F. Africa

**ager, agrī,** M. a field

**agitat,** vb. *agitates*

**agitātor, ōris,** M. a driver

**agitātus, a, um,** driven, agitated

**agnus, i,** M. a lamb

**agricola, ae,** M. a farmer

**agunt,** vb. *they spend*

**albus, a, um,** white

**aliēnus, a, um,** another's

**aliquis, aliquid,** some one, something

**aliquot,** indef. incl. several (an adj.)

**alius, alia, aliud,** another

**Alpēs, ium,** F. the Alps

**altāria, ium,** N. a high altar

**alter, altera, alterum,** the other (one of two)

**altitūdō, dinis,** F. height

**altus, a, um,** high, deep

**amant,** vb. (they) *love, (they) like*

**amārus, a, um,** bitter

**amat,** vb. *loves, likes*

**amāvērunt,** vb. (they) *loved, liked*

**amāvit,** vb. (he, she, it) *loved, liked*

**amicus, i,** M. a friend

**amicus, a, um,** friendly

**amnis, is,** M. a stream

**an,** conj. or

**ancora, ae,** F. Gr. an anchor

**Ancus Marcius,** Ancus Marcius (4th King of Rome)

**anguis, is,** C. a snake

**anima, ae,** F. wind, breath, Life

**animal, ālis,** N. an animal

**animus, i,** M. mind, courage, Soul.

**annus, i,** M. a year

**ante,** prep. w. Acc. *before, in front of*

**antiquus, a, um,** old, ancient

**annulus, i,** M. a little ring { a finger ring  
a signet ring

**aper, aprī,** M. a wild boar

**apertē,** adv. *openly*

**Apollō, inis,** M. Apollo (the god)

**appārent,** vb. *appear*

**appellāvit,** vb. *addressed*

**apud,** prep. w. Acc. *near, at*

**aqua, ae,** F. water

**āra, ae,** F. an altar

**Arabs, abis,** M. an Arab

**arātor, ōris,** M. a plow-man

**arbor, oris,** F. a tree

**arcus, ūs,** M. a bow, an arch

**Arethūsa, ae,** F. A celebrated fountain near Syracuse.

**āridus, a, um,** dry, parched

**armus, i,** M. Gr. the shoulder (of an animal)

**Arnus, i,** M. The river Arno

**artūs, uum,** M. the joints

**arvum, i,** N. plow-land

**arx, arcis,** F. a citadel

**ascendērunt,** vb. *climbed up*

**Asia, ae,** F. Asia

**asinus, i,** M. an ass

**asper, era, erum,** rough, rugged, harsh

**āter, ātra, ātrum,** dark

**Athēnae, ārum,** F. the city Athens

**atque,** conj. *and also*

**auctor, ōris,** C. an author

**audax, ācis,** bold, daring

# ONE THOUSAND WORDS DEFINED

aura, ae, F. Gr. *a breeze*  
 aureus, a, um, *golden*  
 auris, is, F. *an ear*  
 Aurōra, ae, F. Gr. *The Dawn*  
 aurum, i, N. *gold*  
 aut, conj. *or*  
 aut...aut, (correl. conjs.) *either...or*  
 autem, conj. *but, however*  
 autumnus, i, M. *autumn*, (Sept. 22-Dec. 22=91 days)  
 auxilium, ii, N. *aid*  
 Aventinus, a, um, *Aventine*  
 avia, ae, F. *a grandmother*  
 avis, avis, F. *a bird*  
 avus, i, M. *a grandfather*

## B

Bacchus, i, M. *Bacchus* (god of wine)  
 barba, ae, F. *the beard*  
 beātē, adv. *blissfully*  
 Belgae, ārum, M. *The Belgians*  
 bellum, i, N. *war*  
 benevolus, a, um, *benevolent*  
 benignus, a, um, *kind*  
 bicornis, e, *two-horned*  
 blandus, a, um, *flattering, fawning*  
 bona, ōrum, N. *goods* (=personal property)  
 bonus, a, um, *good*  
 bōs, bovis, C. *ox, cow*  
 brevis, breve, *short, brief*  
 Britannia, ae, F. *Britain*

## C

caballus, i, M. *a nag*  
 cadāver, āveris, N. *a corpse*  
 cadit, vb. *falls*  
 Caelius, a, um, *Caelian*  
 caelum, i, N. *the sky*  
 caementum, i, N. *building stone* (in huge rough blocks)  
 Caesar, aris, M. *Caesar*  
 calculus, i, M. *a pebble*  
 calor, ōris, M. *heat*  
 calx, calcis, F. *lime*  
 Campanus, a, um, *Campanian*  
 campus, i, M. *an open field, a plain*  
 candēla, ae, F. *a candle*  
 candidus, a, um, *dazzling white*  
 canis, canis, C. *a dog*  
 caper, capri, M. *a goat*  
 Capitōlinus, a, um, *Capitoline*  
 caput, itis, N. *the head*

carbō, ōnis, M. *a coal, charcoal*  
 carmen, inis, N. *a song*  
 carō, carnis, F. *flesh*  
 cārus, a, um, *dear*  
 catēna, ae, F. *a chain*  
 Catō, ōnis, M. *Cato*, ("The Censor" of morals)  
 causa, ae, F. *cause, trial or suit at law*  
 causā, Abl. *for the sake of*  
 celeriter, adv. *quickly*  
 cēna, ae, F. *dinner*  
 centēsimus, a, um, *hundredth*  
 centum, (num, incl.) *hundred*  
 Cerberus, i, M. *Cerberus*, (the three-headed dog)  
 cerebrum, i, N. *the brain*  
 certē, adv. *certainly*  
 cibus, i, M. *food*  
 Cicerō, ōnis, M. *Cicero* (the orator)  
 cinis, eris, M. *ashes*  
 circiter, adv. *about*  
 circulus, i, M. *a circle, a ring, a hoop*  
 circum, prep. w. Acc. *round*  
 circumfluit, vb. *flows round*  
 cisterna, ae, F. *a cistern*  
 civis, is, C. *a citizen*  
 civitas, ātis, F. *the state*  
 clāmōr, ōris, M. *a shout, a clamor*  
 clārus, a, um, *clear, bright*  
 classis, is, F. *the fleet*  
 clivus, i, M. *a hill*  
 collectus, a, um, *collected, assembled*  
 collis, collis, M. *a hill*  
 collum, i, N. *the neck*  
 color, ōris, M. *color*  
 colunt, vb. (they) *cultivate*  
 communis, e, *common*  
 compositus, a, um, *composed of*  
 concrētus, a, um, *hardened, stiffened, congealed*  
 conjux, jugis, C. *a wife, a husband*  
 cōsul, lis, M. *consul*  
 continuus, a, um, *continuous*  
 contrā, prep. w. Acc. *opposite to, against*  
 cōpia, ae, F. *plenty, abundance*  
 coquit, vb. *cooks, bakes, parches, chars*  
 coquus, i, M. *a cook*  
 cor, cordis, N. *the heart*  
 cornū, ūs, N. *a horn*  
 corpus, oris, N. *a body*  
 cremāvērunt, vb. *they burned*  
 crocodilus, i, M. Gr. *a crocodile*  
 crūs, crūris, N. *a leg*

# ONE THOUSAND WORDS DEFINED

crux, crucis, F. *a cross*  
cultus, a, um, *cultivated*  
cum, adv. *when*  
cum, prep. w. Abl. *with*  
cūra, ae, F. *care*  
cūrāverunt, vb. *took care of*  
currus, ūs, M. *a chariot*  
cursus, ūs, M. *a running, a course*  
custōs, ōdis, C. *a guard*  
cutis, is, F. *the skin*

## D

Dānuvius, ii, M. *The upper river Danube*  
dē, prep. w. Abl. *down from, from, out of, about, of*  
dea, deae, F. *a goddess*  
decem, (num, incl.) *ten*  
decimus, a, um, *tenth*  
deinde, adv. *then, finally*  
dēliciae, ārum, F. *delight*  
Delta, ae, F. Gr. *The Delta*  
Dēmōsthenes, is, M. *Demosthenes (the orator)*  
dēns, dentis, M. *a tooth*  
dēnsus, a, um, *thick, dense*  
dēscribunt, vb. *write down, sketch*  
dēserta, ōrum, N. *deserts*  
dēsilit, vb. *leaps down*  
deus, dei, M. *a god*  
dīcit, vb. *says, speaks*  
dicunt, vb. *they say, tell*  
diēs, diēi, M. or F. *a day*  
differt, vb. *differs*  
difficilis, e, *difficult*  
diffundunt, vb. *spread abroad*  
digitus, i, M. *a finger, a finger breadth*  
Diogenes, is, M. *Diogenes (the Cynic philosopher)*  
disciplina, ae, F. *discipline*  
diū, adv. *long, long while*  
dives, itis, M. *a rich man*  
divisus, a, um, *divided*  
dixit, vb. *said*  
docet, vb. *teaches*  
doctor, ōris, M. *a teacher*  
doctus, a, um, *learned*  
domicilium, ii, N. *dwelling place, abode*  
domus, ūs, F. *a house, home*  
dōnātus, a, um, *given, presented*  
ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred*  
dūcit, vb. *leads*  
dulcis, e, *sweet*  
dum, adv. *while, until*

duo, duae, duo, *two*  
duodēcentēsīmus, a, um, *ninety-eighth*  
duodecim, (num, incl.) *twelve*  
duodecimus, a, um, *twelfth*  
duplex, icis, *double*  
dūrus, a, um, *hard*  
dux, ducis, C. *leader*

## E

ebur, eboris, N. *ivory*  
ego, mei, mihi, mē, (—), *me, I, of me, etc.*  
Egyptius, i, M. *an Egyptian*  
ejus, ejus, ejus, (substantive), *of him, of her, of it*  
ejus, ejus, ejus, (possessive), *his, hers, its*  
elementum, i, N. *an element*  
emptor, ōris, M. *a buyer*  
enim, conj. *for, indeed*  
eōrum, eārum, eōrum, (substantive), *of them, etc.*  
eōrum, eārum, eōrum, (possessive), *their, theirs*  
ephippium, ii, N. Gr. *a horse-cloth, a saddle*  
epistola, ae, F. Gr. *a letter*  
equa, ae, F. *a mare*  
equus, i, M. *a horse*  
erant, vb. 3d Plur. *were*  
erat, vb. 3d Sing. *was*  
Esquilinus, a, um, *Esquiline*  
est, vb. 3d Sing. *is, (there) is*  
et, conj. *and*  
et...et, correl. conj., *both...and*  
etiam, adv. *also*  
Euphrātes, is, M. *The river Euphrates*  
Eurōpa, ae, F. *Europe*  
ex, ē, prep. w. Abl. *out of, from*  
exercitus, ūs, M. *an army*  
exitus, ūs, M. *an outlet*  
expulsus, a, um, *driven out, expelled*  
exstinguunt, vb. *extinguish*  
exsul, ulis, C. *an exile*

## F

faciēs, ēi, F. *the face*  
facile, adv. *easily*  
facilis, e, *easy*  
facillimē, adv. *very easily*  
facit, vb. *makes*  
faciunt, vb. *make*  
falsus, a, um, *false*  
far, farris, N. *spell*  
fas, N. *divine law*  
fax, facis, F. *a torch*

# ONE THOUSAND WORDS DEFINED

fēcit, vb. *made*  
 fel, fellis, N. *gall*  
 fēlis, is, F. *a cat*  
 fēlix, icis, *favorable, lucky*  
 fēmina, ae, F. *woman*  
 femur, oris, N. *the thigh*  
 ferē, adv. *almost, nearly*  
 ferreus, ea, eum, *iron (adj.)*  
 fervidus, a, um, *hot, glowing*  
 fidēlis, e, *faithful, trusty*  
 fidēs, ei, F. *faith*  
 filia, ae, F. *a daughter*  
 filius, ii, M. *a son*  
 finis, is, M. *end, limit, boundary*  
 flāmen, inis, M. *a priest*  
 flamma, ae, F. *a flame, a blaze*  
 Flōrentia, ae, F. *Florence (the city)*  
 flōs, ōris, M. *flower*  
 fluctus, ūs, M. *a billow*  
 fluēns, entis, *flowing*  
 fluit, vb. *flows*  
 flūmen, inis, N. *river*  
 fluunt, vb. *flow*  
 fluvius, ii, M. *river*  
 focus, i, M. *a brazier, (a fire-pan)*  
 focus, i, M. *a fire-place, (a hearth)*  
 foedus, a, um, *foul, disgraceful*  
 fōns, tis, M. *a spring*  
 forāmen, inis, N. *an opening, a hole*  
 forma, ae, F. *a diagram, a figure*  
 formica, ae, F. *the ant*  
 fortis, forte, *strong, brave*  
 fortūna, ae, F. *good fortune, luck*  
 frangit, vb. *breaks*  
 frāter, frātris, M. *brother*  
 frequēns, ntis, *frequent, constant*  
 frigidus, a, um, *cold (the adj.)*  
 frigus, oris, N. *cold*  
 frōns, frontis, F. *the forehead, brow*  
 frūgēs, frūgum, F. *fruits*  
 frūgī, īndcl. *frugal, thrifty*  
 fuērunt, vb. *have been, were*  
 fugat, vb. *puts to flight*  
 fuit, vb. *has been, was*  
 fulgur, uris, N. *lightning (sheet)*  
 fūligō, inis, F. *soot*  
 fulmen, inis, N. *a thunderbolt*  
 fūmōsus, a, um, *smoking*  
 fūmus, i, M. *smoke*  
 fundēns, ntis, *pouring*

fundit, vb. *pours*  
 fundus, i, M. *the bottom (of any thing)*  
 fūnus, eris, N. *a funeral, (the burning of a body)*  
 furit, vb. *raves, rages*

## G

Gallia, ae, F. *Gaul, (now France)*  
 gallina, ae, F. *a hen*  
 gelidus, a, um, *icy, frosty, frozen*  
 gelus, ūs, M. *("hard") frost, cold*  
 generālis, e, *general*  
 generāliter, adv. *in general, generally*  
 gēns, tis, F. *race, (= the race of men)*  
 genū, ūs, N. *the knee*  
 genus, eris, N. *kind, sort*  
 Germāni, ōrum, M. *The Germans*  
 glaciēs, ēi, F. *ice*  
 gladiātor, ōris, M. *a gladiator (a swordsman)*  
 globōsus, a, um, *spherical*  
 gracilis, e, *thin*  
 Graecē, adv. *in Greek*  
 Graeci, ōrum, M. *The Greeks*  
 Graecia, ae, F. *Greece*  
 Graecus, a, um, *Greek, Grecian*  
 grandis, e, *large*  
 grandō, inis, F. *hail*  
 grātus, a, um, *pleasing*  
 gravis, e, *heavy*  
 gravitas, ātis, *heaviness, weight*  
 gurgēs, itis, M. *a whirlpool*

## H

habent, vb. *have*  
 habet, vb. *has*  
 habuērunt, vb. *(they) had*  
 habuit, vb. *(he, she, it) had*  
 Hadriāticus, a, um, *Adriatic*  
 haedus, i, M. *a kid*  
 harēna, ae, F. *sand*  
 Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian*  
 herba, ae, F. *grass, herb*  
 hibernus, a, um, *winter (adj.)*  
 hiems, is, F. *winter (Sept. 22–Mar. 22), 2d half of the year*  
 hic, haec, hoc, *this (near me)*  
 hic, adv. *here*  
 Hispānia, ae, F. *Spain (the country)*  
 holus, eris, N. *vegetables*  
 homō, inis, C. *man, a human being*  
 honor, ōris, M. *honor*



# ONE THOUSAND WORDS DEFINED

**hōra**, ae, F. *an hour*  
**Horātius**, ii, M. *Horace* (the poet)  
**horreum**, i, N. *a granary*  
**horridus**, a, um, *bristling, frightful*  
**hortus**, i, M. *a garden*  
**hostis**, hostis, C. *an enemy* (public)  
**hūc**, adv. *hither*  
**humilis**, e, *low, lowly, humble*  
**humus**, i, F. *the ground*

## I

**idem**, eadem, idem, *same*  
**ignāvus**, a, um, *lazy*  
**ignis**, ignis, M. *fire*  
**ille**, illa, illud, *that, the former*  
**illūc**, adv. *thither*  
**immēnsus**, a, um, *boundless, vast*  
**in**, prep. (w. Abl.) *in, on*; (w. Ace.) *into, upon*  
**inanimus**, a, um, *lifeless*  
**incendium**, ii, N. *a fire*  
**incertus**, a, um, *uncertain*  
**Indus**, a, um, *Indian*  
**industrius**, a, um, *industrious*  
**infāns**, ntis, C. *an infant, babe*, (till 7 years)  
**infimus**, a, um, *lowest*  
**inflectēns**, entis, *bending, curving*  
**ingēns**, tis, *huge, vast*  
**initium**, ii, N. *a beginning*  
**insānus**, a, um, *insane, mad*  
**instrūmentum**, i, N. *an instrument*  
**insula**, ae, F. *island*  
**intelligunt**, vb. (they) *know, understand*  
**inter**, prep. w. Acc. *between, among*  
**intervallum**, i, N. *an interval*  
**invicem**, adv. *in turn*  
**invitāvit**, vb. (he) *invited*  
**ipse**, ipsa, ipsum, *himself, herself, itself, that very*  
**irrigant**, vb. *irrigate*  
**irrigat**, vb. *irrigates*  
**is**, ea, id, (personal), *he, she, it*  
**is**, ea, id, (determinative), *that* ("the aforesaid")  
**iste**, ista, istud, *that* (near you)  
**istic**, adv. *there*  
**it**, vb. (he, she, it) *goes*  
**Italia**, ae, F. *Italy*  
**itaque**, conj. *and so, therefore*  
**iter**, itineris, N. *a journey*

## J

**jam**, adv. *now, already*  
**jānuā**, ae, F. *front door, entrance*

**jecur**, jecinoris, etc., N. *the liver*  
**jūdex**, icis, C. *a judge*  
**jūgerum**, i, N. *a Roman acre*  
**jugum**, i, N. { *a yoke for oxen*  
                           *a collar for horses*  
**jungit**, vb. *joins together*  
**Jūnō**, ōnis, F. *Juno* (the goddess)  
**Jūpiter**, } *Jovis, M. Jupiter* (the god)  
**Juppiter**, }  
**jūs**, jūris, N. *human law*  
**justitia**, ae, F. *justice, uprightness*  
**justus**, a, um, *just*  
**Juvenālis**, is, M. *Juvenal* (the satirist)  
**juvenis**, is, C. *a young person*

## L

**labrum**, i, N. *a lip*  
**lac**, lactis, N. *milk*  
**Lacedaemonii**, ōrum, M. *The Spartans*  
**lacrima**, ae, F. *a tear*  
**lacus**, ūs, M. *a lake*  
**lanterna**, ae, F. *a lantern* (of horn)  
**Larēs**, um, and ium, M. *The Lares*, (household gods)  
**largē**, adv. *plentifully*  
**lātē**, adv. *wide, widely*  
**Latīnē**, adv. *in Latin*  
**lātītūdō**, dinis, F. *width, breadth*  
**lātus**, a, um, *wide, broad*  
**laudant**, vb. *praise*  
**laudat**, vb. *praises*  
**lector**, ōris, M. *a reader*  
**lēnis**, e, *mild, gentle*  
**leō**, leōnis, M. *a lion*  
**lepus**, oris, M. *a hare*  
**levis**, e, *light*  
**leviter**, adv. *lightly*  
**lex**, lēgis, F. *law*  
**liber**, libri, M. *a book*  
**liber**, era, erum, *free*  
**liberī**, ōrum, M. pl. *the children*  
**libertas**, tātis, F. *liberty, freedom*  
**Libya**, ae, F. *Libya* (now Africa)  
**Libycus**, a, um, *Libyan*  
**lignum**, i, N. *wood, firewood*  
**limen**, inis, N. *a threshold*  
**limus**, i, M. *mire, filth*  
**lingua**, ae, F. *the tongue*  
**litterae**, ārum, F. *a letter*  
**Litterae**, ārum, F. *Literature*  
**litterātor**, ōris, M. *the teacher* (of the 3 R's)

# ONE THOUSAND WORDS DEFINED

lītus, oris, N. *the shore*  
 locātus, a, um, *placed, located*  
 locus, i, M. *a place, a spot*  
 longē, adv. *far*  
 longitūdō, dinis, F. *length*  
 longus, a, um, *long*  
 lōrum, i, N. *a thong (of leather)*  
 lucerna, ae, F. *a lamp (for oil)*  
 lūcus, i, M. *a grove*  
 lūdus, i, M. *school*  
 lūmen, inis, N. *light, (a source of light)*  
 Lūna, ae, F. *The Moon*  
 lupus, i, M. *a wolf*  
 lux, lūcis, F. *the light*  
 luxuriēs, ēi, F. *extravagance*

## M

magis, adv. *more (in quality)*  
 magister, trī, M. *a master*  
 magnus, a, um, *great*  
 mājus, adv. *greater, (Comp. of magnus)*  
 malus, a, um, *bad, evil*  
 mālus, i, F. *an apple-tree*  
 mānant, vb. *trickle*  
 mānat, vb. *trickles*  
 māne, incl. N. *the morning*  
 manet, vb. *stays*  
 manus, ūs, F. *the hand*  
 mare, is, N. *the sea*  
 marinus, a, um, *sea (an adj.)*  
 maritimus, a, um, *maritime*  
 marmor, oris, N. *marble*  
 Mars, tis, M. *Mars, (god of war)*  
 māter, tris, F. *mother*  
 māteria, ae, } F. *material, (mother-stuff)*  
 māteriēs, ēi, }  
 mathēmaticus, i, M. Gr. *a mathematician*  
 matrōna, ae, F. *a lady*  
 mātūrus, a, um, *early*  
 maximē, adv. *chiefly, especially*  
 maximus, a, um, *greatest, (Superl. of magnus)*  
 mē, me (Acc.), mē, by, with, from me (Abl.)  
 medicus, i, M. *a doctor, a physician*  
 mediterrāneus, a, um, *midland*  
 medius, a, um, *mid-, middle*  
 mel, mellis, N. *honey*  
 melior, ior, ius, *better, (Comp. of bonus)*  
 memoria, ae, F. *memory*  
 mēns, tis, F. *the mind*  
 mēnsis, is, M. *a month*

mēnsūra, ae, F. *a measure*  
 mercātor, oris, M. *a merchant (wholesale)*  
 meridiēs, ēi, M. *mid-day, noon*  
 metallum, i, N. Gr. *a metal*  
 metus, ūs, M. *fear, dread*  
 meus, mea, meum, my, mine  
 miles, itis, M. *a soldier*  
 milia, ium, N. *thousands*  
 mille, incl. in sing., *thousand*  
 Milō, ōnis, M. *Milo* { 1. *The athlete*  
 { 2. *The gladiator*  
 minister, trī, M. *a servant*  
 minor, minor, minus, *smaller, less*  
 minūtus, a, um, *little, minute*  
 mirābiliter, adv. *in a wonderful way*  
 mīrus, a, um, *wonderful*  
 miser, era, erum, *miserable, wretched*  
 misit, vb. *sent*  
 mittit, vb. *sends*  
 mixtus, a, um, *mixed, mingled*  
 molestus, a, um, *troublesome*  
 mōns, montis, M. *a mountain*  
 mortārium, ii, N. *mortar*  
 mōs, ōris, M. *custom, manner*  
 mōtor, ōris, M. *a mover, a rocker (of the cradle)*  
 mōtus, ūs, M. *a motion*  
 movent, vb. (they) *move*  
 movet, vb. *moves*  
 mox, adv. *soon*  
 mulier, eris, F. *a woman*  
 multus, a, um, *much (sing.), many (plur.)*  
 mūlus, i, M. *a mule*  
 mundus, i, M. *the universe*  
 mūrus, i, M. *a wall*  
 mūs, mūris, C. *a mouse, rat, martin, sable, ermine*

## N

nāsus, i, M. *the nose*  
 nātūra, ae, F. *nature*  
 nauta, ae, M. *a sailor*  
 nāvis, nāvis, F. *a ship*  
 ne, adv. *not, neither*  
 -ne, enclitic, *whether*  
 nebula, ae, F. *fog, mist*  
 nec, adv. *not*  
 nec . . . nec, (correl. conjs.) *neither . . . nor*  
 nefārius, a, um, *impious*  
 negat, vb. *denies*  
 negōtium, ii, N. *business*  
 nēmō, inis, C. *no man, no one, nobody*

# ONE THOUSAND WORDS DEFINED

nēquam, indcl. *worthless, naughty*  
 neque, conj. adv. *and not, also not*  
 neque... neque, (correl. conjs.) *neither... nor*  
 nervus, i, M. *a sinew, a muscle*  
 neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither (of the two)*  
 niger, gra, grum, *black*  
 nihil, or nil, indcl. N. *nothing*  
 Nilus, i, M. *The river Nile*  
 nimbus, i, M. *a rain-storm*  
 nivālis, e, *snow (an Adj.)*  
 nix, nivis, F. *snow*  
 noctū, adv. *by night*  
 nōdus, i, M. *a knot*  
 nōmen, inis, N. *a name*  
 nōn, adv. *not*  
 nōnāgintā, num. indcl. *ninety*  
 nonnūllus, a, um, *some one*  
 nōnus, a, um, *ninth*  
 nōs, nostrum, trī (personal), *we, of us*  
 noster, tra, trum (possessive), *our, ours*  
 nota, ae, F. *a mark*  
 novem, num. indcl. *nine*  
 novus, a, um, *new*  
 nox, noctis, F. *night*  
 noxius, a, um, *hurtful*  
 nūbēs, nūbis, F. *a cloud*  
 nūgae, ārum, F. *trifles, nonsense*  
 nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, *none, no*  
 numerant, vb. *count*  
 numerus, i, M. *number*  
 Numida, ae, M. *a Numidian*  
 numquam, adv. *never*  
 nunc, adv. *just now*  
 nuntiat, vb. *announces*  
 nūtrix, icis, F. *a nurse*

## O

ob, prep. w. Acc. *in the way of*  
 obstat, vb. *stands in the way*  
 obtinet, vb. *occupies*  
 Oceanus, i, M. *The Ocean*  
 octāvus, a, um, *eighth*  
 octō, num. indcl. *eight*  
 octōgēsimus, a, um, *eight hundredth*  
 octōgintā, (num. indcl.) *eighty*  
 oculus, i, M. *an eye*  
 odor, odōris, M. *odor, smell*  
 officium, ii, N. *duty, office*  
 omninō, adv. *wholly, entirely*  
 omnis, e, all (in pl.), *every (in sing.)*

oppidum, i, N. *a town (walled)*  
 optat, vb. *wishes, longs for*  
 optimus, a, um, *best, (superl. of bonus)*  
 ōra, ae, F. *the coast (of the sea)*  
 ōrātor, ōris, M. *an orator, a speaker*  
 orbis, is, M. *a circle, a ring, the world*  
 origō, inis, F. *source, origin*  
 ornāmentum, i, N. *an ornament*  
 ōs, ōris, N. *the mouth, the face*  
 os, ossis, N. *a bone*  
 Ostia, ae, F. *Ostia (the city)*  
 ostium, ii, N. *an opening for entrance*  
 ovis, ovis, F. *a sheep*  
 ōvum, i, N. *an egg*

## P

Padus, i, M. *The river Po*  
 paeninsula, ae, F. *a peninsula*  
 pāgus, i, M. *a district, a canton*  
 Palaemon, ōnis, M. *the name of a sea-god*  
 Palātīnus, a, um, *Palatine*  
 palmus, i, M. *the palm of the hand, a hand-breadth*  
 palus, ūdis, F. *a swamp, a bog*  
 Pansa, ae, M. *Pansa, (a noted Roman)*  
 pār, paris, *equal (adj.)*  
 parat, vb. *prepares*  
 parēns, tis, C. *a parent*  
 pariter, adv. *equally*  
 Parius, a, um, *Parian*  
 Paros, i, F. *Paros (the island)*  
 pars, tis, F. *a part, side*  
 parvus, a, um, *small, little*  
 pascuus, a, um, *pasture (an adj.)*  
 passus, ūs, M. *a pace, (= five Roman feet)*  
 patella, ae, F. *a plate*  
 pater, patris, M. *a father*  
 patria, ae, F. *one's fatherland*  
 paucī, ae, a, *few*  
 pax, pācis, F. *peace*  
 pectus, oris, N. *the breast*  
 pecūnia, ae, F. *money*  
 pecus, oris, N. *a herd of cattle*  
 pendēns, tis, *hanging*  
 per, prep. w. Acc. *through, over*  
 periculōsus, a, um, *dangerous*  
 periculum, i, N. *danger, peril*  
 perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual*  
 Persae, ārum, M. *The Persians*  
 pēs, pedis, M. *foot*  
 Pharisaeus, i, M. *a Pharisee*

# ONE THOUSAND WORDS DEFINED

philosophus, i, M. Gr. *a philosopher*  
 pictor, ōris, M. *a painter*  
 pietas, ātis, F. 1. *piety*, 2. *duty*  
 piger, gra, grum, *slothful*  
 pila, ae, F. *a ball*  
 pineus, a, um, *pine* (an adj.)  
 pingit, vb. *paints*  
 pinguis, e, *fat*  
 piscis, piscis, M. *a fish*  
 plānitēs, ēi, F. *a plain*  
 plānus, a, um, *level*  
 Platō, ōnis, M. Gr. *Plato* (the philosopher)  
 Plebs, } is, F. *The Common People*  
 Plēbēs, }  
 plēnus, a, um, *full*  
 plumbum, i, N. *lead*  
 plūs, plūris, *more* (in quantity)  
 Plūtō, ōnis, M. the god *Pluto*  
 pluvia, ae, F. *rain*  
 pluviālis, e, *rain* (an adj.)  
 poēma, atis, N. Gr. *a poem*  
 Pompēiānum, i, N. Cicero's *Villa* (near Pompeii)  
 pōns, tis, M. *a bridge*  
 populāris, e, *popular*  
 populus, i, M. *the people*  
 porcus, i, M. *a pig, a hog, a swine*  
 porta, ae, F. *a gate*  
 portāvit, vb. *carried*  
 porticus, ūs, F. *a piazza, a portico*  
 portus, ūs, M. *a harbor, a port*  
 positus, a, um, *located, situated*  
 post, prep. w. Acc. *after*  
 postea, adv. *afterwards*  
 posterus, a, um, *following, next*  
 postrēmus, a, um, *the last*  
 posuit, vb. *placed*  
 potestas, ātis, F. *power*  
 potuit, vb. *has been able*  
 praesēns, tis, *present*  
 praetextus, a, um, *bordered with purple*  
 prātum, i, N. *a meadow*  
 pretium, ii, N. *price*  
 primus, a, um, *first*  
 princeps, cipis, M. *a chief*  
 prior, prius, *in front*  
 prō, prep. w. Abl. *before, for*  
 probus, a, um, *honest*  
 procella, ae, F. *a gale*  
 procul, adv. *afar off, at a distance*  
 prōfluēns, ntis, *running* (as water)

profundus, a, um, *deep*  
 prōmunturium, ii, N. *a headland*  
 propriē, adv. *properly*  
 propter, prep. w. Acc. *on account of*  
 prospectus, ūs, M. *the view*  
 prosperē, adv. *favorably*  
 prosperus, a, um, *favorable*  
 prōverbium, ii, N. *maxim, proverb*  
 proximus, a, um, *nearest, next*  
 pruina, ae, F. *hoar-frost*  
 publicānus, i, M. *a tax-gatherer*  
 publicum, i, N. *the public* (a noun)  
 puella, ae, F. *a girl*  
 puer, eri, M. *a boy, orig. a child*  
 pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful*  
 pullus equinus, *a colt*  
 pulmō, ōnis, M. *a lung*  
 pūpilla, ae, F. *an orphan girl*  
 pūpillus, i, M. *an orphan boy*  
 pūrus, a, um, *clean, pure*  
 puteus, i, M. *a well*  
 Pŷthagoras, ae, M. *Pythagoras* (the philosopher)

## Q

quadrāgintā, num. incl. *forty*  
 quam, adv. *how, than*  
 quantus, *how great*  
 quārtus, a, um, *fourth*  
 quasi, adv. *as it were*  
 quattuor, (num. incl.) *four*  
 quattuordecim, (num. incl.) *fourteen*  
 -que, conj. *and*  
 -que . . . -que, (correl. conjs.) *both . . . and*  
 quī, quae, quod, (the relative) *who, which*  
 quī —? quae —? quod —? *what —? which —?*  
 quia, conj. *because*  
 quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain*  
 quidem, adv. *indeed*  
 quindecim, num. incl. *fifteen*  
 quīque, num. incl. *five*  
 quintus, a, um, *fifth*  
 Quirinālis, e, *Quirinal*  
 quis? quae? quid? (the interrogative) *who? what?*  
 quisque, quaeque, quodque, *each* (one)  
 quod, conj. *because*  
 quoniam, adv. *since*  
 quotus, a, um, *what* (in number), *how many*

## R

radius, ii, M. *a ray*  
 rārus, a, um, *rare, thin*

# ONE THOUSAND WORDS DEFINED

*ratio*, *ōnis*, F. *reason*  
*recēns*, *ntis*, *fresh*, *recent*  
*redit*, vb. *goes back*, *returns*  
*rēgina*, *ae*, F. *a queen*  
*regnum*, *i*, N. *a kingdom*  
*reliquus*, *a*, *um*, *remaining*  
*repentinus*, *a*, *um*, *sudden*  
*rēs*, *rei*, F. *a thing*  
*rēsina*, *ae*, F. *resin* (a gum)  
*Rēspūblica*, *Reipūblīcae*, F. *The Commonwealth*  
*retrōrsum*, adv. *backwards*  
*rex*, *rēgis*, M. *a king*  
*Rhēnus*, *i*, M. *The river Rhine*  
*ripa*, *ae*, F. *the bank* (of a river)  
*rivus*, *i*, M. *a brook* (= a small stream)  
*Rōma*, *ae*, F. *Rome* (the city)  
*Rōmānus*, *a*, *um*, *Roman* (an adj.)  
*Rōmānus*, *i*, M. *A Roman*  
*Rōmulus*, *i*, M. *Romulus*  
*rōs*, *rōris*, M. *dew*  
*Rostra*, *ōrum*, N. *The Rostra*, (the speaker's platform)  
*rotundus*, *a*, *um*, *round*  
*rudis*, *e*, *rude*, *uncultivated*  
*rūpēs*, *is*, F. *a crag*, *a cliff*  
*rūra*, (Nom. Acc. Plur. only), *the fields*  
*rūs*, *rūris*, N. *the country*  
*rusticus*, *i*, M. *a countryman*, *peasant*  
*rusticus*, *a*, *um*, *country*, *rustic*, *rural*  
*ruunt*, vb. *rush out*

## S

*sacer*, *cra*, *crum*, *sacred*  
*sacrificium*, *ii*, N. *a sacrifice*  
*saepe*, adv. *often*  
*sagax*, *ācis*, *shrewd*, *sagacious*  
*saltus*, *ūs*, M. *a leap*, *a spring*, *a bound*  
*salum*, *i*, N. Gr. *the high sea*  
*salūtāvit*, vb. *saluted*, *greeted*  
*sānus*, *a*, *um*, *sensible*  
*sanguis*, *inis*, M. *blood*  
*satis*, adv. *enough*  
*scelestus*, *a*, *um*, *wicked*  
*scintilla*, *ae*, F. *a spark*  
*scorpiō*, *ōnis*, M. Gr. *a scorpion*  
*scriba*, *ae*, M. *a clerk*  
*scrūpulus*, *i*, M. *a small sharp stone*, *anxiety*  
*sculptor*, *ōris*, M. *a sculptor*  
*secundus*, *a*, *um*, *second*  
*sed*, conj. *but*  
*sēdecim*, num. incl. *sixteen*

*sēdēs*, *sēdis*, F. *a seat*  
*sedile*, *is*, N. *a seat*  
*semper*, adv. *always*  
*sempiternus*, *a*, *um*, *everlasting*  
*senātor*, *ōris*, M. *a senator*  
*senectūs*, *ūtis*, F. *old age*  
*senex*, *senis*, C. *an old man or woman*  
*senex*, *senis*, *old* (adj.)  
*septem*, (num. incl.) *seven*  
*septimus*, *a*, *um*, *seventh*  
*septuāgēsimus*, *a*, *um*, *seventieth*  
*septuāgintā*, num. incl. *seventy*  
*servus*, *i*, M. *a slave*  
*sex*, num. incl. *six*  
*sexāgēsimus*, *a*, *um*, *sixtieth*  
*sexāgintā*, (num. incl.) *sixty*  
*sextus*, *a*, *um*, *sixth*  
*sic*, adv., *so*, *thus*  
*siccus*, *a*, *um*, *dry*  
*Sicilia*, *ae*, F. *Sicily* (the island)  
*sicut*, *just as*, *as*  
*sidus*, *eris*, N. *a constellation*, *a star*  
*significat*, vb. *signifies*  
*silex*, *icis*, M. *a flint*  
*silva*, *ae*, F. *woods*, *forest*  
*silvester*, *tris*, *tre*, *woody*, *wooded*  
*similis*, *e*, *like*  
*similiter*, adv. *similarly*, (in like manner)  
*similitūdō*, *dinis*, F. *a likeness*  
*simplex*, *icis*, *simple*, *artless*  
*sine*, prep. w. Abl. *without*  
*singuli*, *ae*, *a*, *each one* (taken singly)  
*situs*, *a*, *um*, *situated*, *placed*  
*Sōcrates*, *is*, M. Gr. *Socrates* (the philosopher)  
*Sōl*, *Sōlis*, M. *The Sun*  
*solidus*, *a*, *um*, *solid*  
*sōlus*, *sōla*, *sōlum*, *alone*, *only*  
*somnus*, *i*, M. *sleep*  
*sonitus*, *ūs*, M. *sound*, *noise*  
*soror*, *ōris*, F. *a sister*  
*Sparta*, *ae*, F. *the city Sparta*  
*spatium*, *ii*, N. *space*  
*speciēs*, *ēi*, F. *appearance*  
*speculātrix*, *icis*, F. *a spy*  
*spēs*, *spei*, F. *hope*  
*spiritus*, *ūs*, M. *breath*  
*splendidus*, *a*, *um*, *splendid*  
*stadium*, *ii*, N. *a race-course*, *a furlong* (Eng.)  
*stagnāns*, *ntis*, *standing*, *stagnant*  
*stagnum*, *i*, N. *a pool*

# ONE THOUSAND WORDS DEFINED

statua, ae, F. *statue*  
 stimulat, vb. *goads, urges on, stimulates*  
 strepitus, ūs, M. *noise, din*  
 structor, ōris, M. *a builder*  
 structus, a, um, *built*  
 stupidus, a, um, *senseless, stupid*  
 suāvitās, ātis, F. *sweetness*  
 sub, (prep. w. Acc. or Abl.) *under, near by*  
 subitō, adv. *suddenly*  
 sūcus, i, M. *juice, sap*  
 sūdor, ōris, M. *sweat, perspiration*  
 Suēvi, ōrum, M. *The Suevi*  
 sui, sibi, sē, *of himself, etc., of themselves, etc.*  
 sulcus, i, M. *a furrow*  
 sulfur, uris, N. *sulphur*  
 summus, a, um, *highest, the highest part of = the top of*  
 sunt, vb. 3d plur. *are, there are*  
 super, prep. w. Acc. *over, above*, w. Abl. *about*  
 superant, vb. (they) *surpass*  
 superstes, stitis, *surviving*  
 suprà, adv. *above*  
 surgēns, tis, *rising*  
 sūs, suis, C. *a swine*  
 suspēnsus, a, um, *suspended, hung up*  
 sustinuerunt, vb. (they) *upheld, sustained*  
 suus, sua, suum, *his own, her own, its own*  
 suus, sua, suum, *their own, their, theirs*

## T

tactus, ūs, M. *touching, the touch*  
 tam, adv. *so*  
 tamen, conj. *yet*  
 tamquam, adv. *just as*  
 tangit, *touches*  
 tardus, a, um, *slow, late*  
 taurus, i, M. *a bull*  
 tempestas, ātis, F. *storm, tempest, weather*  
 templum, i, N. *a temple*  
 tempus, oris, N. *time*  
 tener, era, erum, *tender*  
 tenuit, vb. *held, kept*  
 ter, adv. *three times, thrice*  
 tergum, i, N. *the back*  
 terra, ae, F. *land*  
 terrent, vb. *frighten, terrify*  
 terrēnus, a, um, *earthly*  
 terribilis, e, *terrible*  
 tertius, a, um, *third*  
 Themistocles, is, M. Gr. *Themistocles (the general)*  
 Tiberis, is, M. *The river Tiber*

toga, ae, F. *the toga*  
 tonitrus, ūs, M. } *thunder*  
 tonitruum, i, N. }  
 tōnsor, ōris, M. *a barber*  
 torris, is, M. *a fire brand*  
 tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole*  
 tranquillus, a, um, *calm, still*  
 trāns, prep. w. Acc. *across*  
 transeunt, vb. *pass by, go by*  
 tredecim, num. incl. *thirteen*  
 trēs, trēs, tria, *three*  
 tricēsimus, a, um, *thirtieth*  
 trigintā, num. incl. *thirty*  
 tristis, e, *sad*  
 tū, tui, tibi, tē, tū, tē, *thou, or you, etc.*  
 tum, adv. *then*  
 tunc, adv. *just then*  
 turbō, inis, M. *whirlwind, hurricane, children's top*  
 turpis, e, *base, shameful*  
 tūs, tūris, N. *incense, frankincense*  
 tūtor, ōris, M. *a guardian*  
 tūtus, a, um, *safe, secure*  
 tuus, tua, tuum, *thy, thine*

## U

ubi, adv. *where*  
 ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, *any (at all)*  
 ultimus, a, um, *farthest*  
 umbra, ae, F. *a shadow, a departed spirit*  
 ūmidus, a, um, *damp, wet*  
 umquam, adv. *ever*  
 ūnā, adv. *at the same time, along with*  
 unda, ae, F. *a wave*  
 ūndecim, num. incl. *eleven*  
 ūndecimus, a, um, *eleventh*  
 undique, adv. *everywhere*  
 ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*  
 urbānus, a, um, *city (adj.)*  
 urbs, urbis, F. *the city*  
 usque, adv. *as far as*  
 ūsus, ūsūs, M. *use*  
 ut, conj. adv. *that, as*  
 uter, utra, utrum, *which (of the two)*  
 uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each (of two), either*  
 ūtilis, e, *useful*  
 uxor, ōris, F. *a wife*

## V

vacuus, a, um, *empty, at leisure*  
 vadum, i, N. *shallow water, a shoal, a ford*  
 validus, a, um, *strong*

## ONE THOUSAND WORDS DEFINED

**vallēs**, is, F. *a valley*  
**vapor**, ōris, M. *steam*  
**varius**, a, um, *various, different*  
**vās**, vāsīs, N. *a vessel*  
**vectigal**, ālis, N. *tax*  
**velut**, adv. *just as*  
**vēna**, ae, F. *a vein*  
**vēnātor**, ōris, M. *a hunter*  
**vēnātrix**, icis, F. *a huntress*  
**vēnērunt**, vb. *came, went*  
**venit**, vb. *comes*  
**ventus**, i, M. *the wind*  
**Venus**, eris, F. *Venus (the goddess)*  
**vēr**, vēris, N. *spring*  
**verbum**, i, N. *a word*  
**vērō**, adv. *in truth, truly*  
**versus**, ūs, M. *a furrow, a verse*  
**vesper**, eris, M. *evening*  
**Vesta**, ae, F. *Vesta (the goddess)*  
**vester**, vestra, vestrum, *your, yours*  
**vetus**, veteris, *old (adj.)*  
**via**, viae, F. *a way, a road, a street*  
**vicissim**, adv. *in turn*  
**victor**, ōris, M. *a conqueror*  
**victrix**, icis, F. *a conqueress*  
**videt**, vb. *sees*

**vigil**, ilis, M. *a watchman*  
**vigilia**, ae, F. 1. *a watch*, 2. *night police*  
**viginti**, num. incl. *twenty*  
**vigor**, ōris, M. *vigor, liveliness*  
**villa**, ae, F. *a villa, a farm*  
**Viminalis**, e, *Viminal, (Willow Hill)*  
**vincit**, vb. *conquers*  
**vinctus**, a, um, *tied, bound*  
**vinxit**, vb. *tied*  
**vir**, viri, M. *a man*  
**virgō**, inis, F. *a virgin, a maiden*  
**viridis**, e, *green*  
**virilis**, e, *manly, of a man*  
**virtūs**, ūtis, F. *valor*  
**vis**, vis (rare), F. *strength, violence*  
**visus**, ūs, M. *seeing, the sight*  
**vīta**, ae, F. *life*  
**vitreus**, a, um, *glass (adj.)*  
**vivit**, vb. *lives*  
**vīvus**, a, um, *alive, living*  
**vixit**, vb. *lived*  
**vocat**, vb. *calls*  
**volucer**, cris, cre, *winged*  
**volvēns**, ntis, *rolling*  
**vōs**, vestrum, or trī, *you, of you*  
**vox**, vōcis, F. *the voice*











YD 12155

541273

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY



